



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	ىرئيسية	المفردات ال
weekend للة نهاية الأسبوع	عط aquarium عط	مركز رياضى sports centre معرض الأ
funfair دهی	planetarium ة السماوية	football stadium استاد كرة القدم
bowling alley لة البولينج	museum	عجلة wheel متحف
exhibition ض	dolphin	مذكرة/يومية diary دولفين

Additional Vocabulary		ä	فردات الإضافي	ماا)	
photos	صور فوتوغرافية	tennis	التنس	birthday	عيد ميلاد
area	منطقة	Which places	أى الأماكن؟ ?	mar T	

Language	Expressions ā	بيرات اللغوي	عتال)
watch >	a football match يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم	1 1 1	bowling يذهب للعب البولينج
b	breakfast/ dinner يتناول الإفطار/ العشاء	go	swimming يذهب للسباحة
have >	a haircut يحصل على قصة شعر	meet >	my best friend المفضَّل
	a maths lesson لديه حصة رياضيات	play >	يلعب التنس tennis

Prepositions	بف الجر	حرو
look at the stars ينظر إلى النجوم	ride on the big wheel یرکب عجلة الملاهی	ما نوع؟ ? What kind of
at the restaurant في المطعم	listen to music یستمع اِلی الموسیقی	on the other side of على الجانب الآخر من

Words and Opposites			الكلمات وعكسها				
am	صباحًا	pm	مساءً	regular	منتظم	irregular p	غير منتظ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			تصريف الأفعال غير الد	
Present		Past simple	Past participle	
ride	يركب	rode	ridden	
see	یری	saw	seen	
go	يذهب	went	gone	
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out	
write	يكتب	wrote	written	
have/has	يملك/ يتناول	had	had	
meet	يقابل	met	met	
swim	يسبح/ يعوم	swam	swum	

Language Notes

but

ولكن (للتعبير عن التناقض)

• I wanted to go to the funfair, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant.

On Sunday, we went to the planetarium, but it was closed.

لذلك (تعبر عن النتيجة)

I love my brother, so we went to his favourite restaurant.

Check Point



- 1. Adel was very ill,he went to hospital.
 - a) but
- b) so
- c) because
- d) as

- 2. Kamal is short,he plays basketball.

 - a) because b) although

d) but

Write it right

How to write about your weekend كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان)
- I went with my family/(الأشخاص الذين نهبت معهم).
- We went by (وسيلة المواصلات)
- (الأفعال التي قمت بها) ١-
- My father (الأفعال التي قام بها
- We went back home (الوقت)
- We had (صفة) time.

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of sentences, names, the pronoun "I" and famous places.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والضمير "ا" والأماكن الشهيرة.

Example

"My last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to the funfair. I went with my family. We went there by car. My father bought us tickets. There were a lot of interesting games. I rode on the big wheel. I felt afraid, but it was fun. My brother went on a ride. He was really happy. My little sister swam in a small plastic swimming pool. My father and mother went for a walk. We all had a wonderful time. We decided to go there again very soon. We went back home late at night. It was fun.

Now,	your	turn:
------	------	-------

حان دورك الآن:

	"A place you visited at the weekend"
I visited	last weekend

Reading 📗

pre-reading question:

. Where did you go last weekend?

1. Read the answers to Ziad's questions and answer these questions:

SB page 2



What did you do last weekend (1)?

I watched a football match.



العطلة الأسبوعية (1)











I rode on the big wheel (2).

I saw an exhibition (3) about dolphins (4).





I looked at the stars.

I went bowling (5).





I played tennis.

Post-reading question:

- Where did Ziad's friends go last weekend?



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- When did they go to the restaurant?

2. Listen to Dina talk about her birthday. Tick (\checkmark) the correct diary:

SB page 3



المتحف (1)

تماثيل (2)

الملاهي (3)

مبنى القبة السماوية (4)

معرض الأحياء المائية (5)

Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday, so I went to the museum⁽¹⁾ with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues⁽²⁾.

We learned a lot.





In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair⁽³⁾, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother, so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday, too! And two days ago, on Sunday, we went to the planetarium⁽⁴⁾, but it was closed.



So, we took a bus to the aquarium⁽⁵⁾ on the other side of town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark!

Post-listening question:

- Where did Dina's brother want to go?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Let's go on the big	wheel at the	this weekend!	WB
a) alley	b) stadium	c) funfair	d) aquarium
2. I loved the fish, but	I didn't see any whale	es at the	WB
a) funfair	b) museum	c) aquarium	d) planetarium
3. It was great at the .	My team w	on 2-0!	WB
a) football stadium	b) bowling	c) planetarium	d) funfair
4. My brother likes to	bowling at	the weekend.	
a) go	b) ride	c) take	d) meet
5. He usually	a haircut twice a mo	onth.	
a) takes	b) has	c) looks	d) goes
6. I write what happe	ens every day in my		
a) story	b) dairy	c) diary	d) book
7. My class went to t	he and look	ed at the stars.	
a) stadium	b) planetarium	c) museum	d) aquarium
8. I my bes	t friend three days ago		
	b) had	C/	d) took
9. Last week, I saw a	/anabout do		
a) museum	b) funfair	c) stadium	d) exhibition
10. We decided to pla	ay basketball at the sp		WB
a) match	b) wheel	c) funfair	d) centre
11. I went for	last weekend.	H	0
a) swimming	b) swim	c) a swimming	d) a swim
12. I my ma			d) rede
a) went	b) had	c) met	d) rode







1. Past simple tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام Form التكوين We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.

التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- She visited her uncle yesterday.
- I went to the museum last night.

Negative

- I didn't listen to music last night.
- النفى

- My father wasn't at home yesterday.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Zeyad doesn't meet his friend yesterday.
- (.....)
- Anas didn't happy at the museum last week.

(.....)

1. Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + inf.?

Was/Were + subject + مسة/اسم ?

Question

السؤال

- Did you watch TV last night?
 - Yes, I did. No, I didn't.
- Were you at the sports centre yesterday?
 - Yes, I was. No, I wasn't.

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word (اداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf.?

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + was/were + subject +?

- When did Dina's family go to the restaurant?

Dina's family went to the restaurant last Friday.

- When was Ramy's birthday?

Ramy's birthday was in October.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- What did you doing last weekend?

			1

2. Past time expressions

تعبيرات الوقت الماضى

We use past time expressions to say when something happened:

نستخدم تعبيرات الوقت الماضي لنقول متى حدث شيء ما:

Time Expressions for the Past Tense

last	ago (منذ)	yesterday (أمس)	in (فى)
(الماضى) last night	10 minutes ago	yesterday	in 2008
last week	an hour ago	yesterday morning	in 2010
last weekend	3 days ago	yesterday afternoon	in 2018
last month	a week ago	yesterday evening	in October
last year	a month ago	yesterday night	in April
last Monday	a year ago		

Examples:

- I went to the museum last week.
- I went bowling three days ago.

- I went to Aswan in 2017.

- I had a haircut yesterday.

استخدام (this morning) مع زمن الماضي.



- I had breakfast this morning.



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 year, I sp	ent my holiday in Pari	S.	
a) In	b) Ago	c) Last	d) Yesterday
2. I have m	y dinner last night.		
a) didn't	b) wasn't	c) don't	d) am not
3. What yo	u do last weekend?		WB
a) do	b) does	c) did	d) were
4. I used my compute	er morning.	70 - 17 mm	
a) next	b) ago	c) yesterday	d) tomorrow
5. He bus to	o the city last week.		
a) took	b) takes	c) is taking	d) take
6. I went to England	on holiday three years		
a) ago	b) last	c) next	d) for
7. The weather	fine this morning.	It's hot now.	
a) was	b) did	c) is	d) does
8. I met my wife	1983.		
a) at	b) ago	c) last	d) in
9. When I was a boy,	I to school ev	very day.	Appeare are
a) am walking	b) walking	c) walk	d) walked
10 you at the	e museum last night?		a a sa a sa a sa sa sa sa sa sa sa sa sa
a) Are	b) Do	c) Did	d) Were
Read and correct	the underlined word	s:	
1. I <u>don't</u> see Habiba y	esterday.		()
2. We didn't get home	()		
3. Where were you go	()		
4. They didn't played	()		
5. My last English less	on was <u>ago an hour</u> .		() WB
6. Who did write this e	()		

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about past events

السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث فى الماضى

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

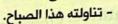
Response

جملة الرد



- When did you have breakfast? متى تناولت الإفطار؟

*I had my breakfast this morning.



<mark>- ذهبت</mark> إلى المتحف.





- Where did you go last weekend? أين ذهبت العطلة الأسبوعية الماضية؟

*I went to the museum.







- When did you meet your best friend? متى قابلت أفضل صديق لك؟

*I met my best friend 2 hours ago.



- قابلته منذ ساعتين.



- When was Dina's birthday? متی کان عید میلاد دینا؟

*It was in October.



- كان في شهر أكتوبر.





(A) Complete the following dialogue:

Salwa	: Hi, Doaa. How was your weekend?
Doaa	: It (1)great!
Salwa	: What (2) you do last weekend
Doaa	: I went to the funfair with my cousin. We had a great time.
Salwa	: (3) did you go there?
Doaa	: At about 8 am.
	: Fantastic! (4) the weather OK?
Doaa	: Yes, it was fine.
Salwa	: So, what was the best thing about the trip?
Doaa	: Well, I (5) on the big wheel.

B Complete the following dialogue:

Aya : Hello my friends, what did you all do last weekend?

Donia : I went bowling in the (1)......centre.

Asmaa : I (2).....tennis.

big wheel.

Samy : I watched a (4)..... at the stadium.

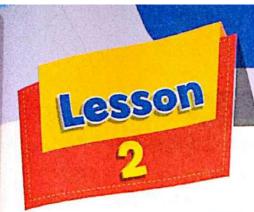
Kareem: I went to the planetarium and looked at the (5).....

Aya: What about you, Salma?

Salma: I stayed home.

Aya : Oh no. Why?

Salma: My mother was ill.





Key Vocabulary		ستي	فردات الرئيد	الم	717
nervous	عصبی/متوتر	move (d) to	ينتقل إلى	school unifor	m زی مدرسی موحد
school cante مدرسة	en مقصف (كانتين) الد	swimming pool	حمام سباحة	dark	ظلام/مظلم

Additional V	ocabulary	المفردات الإضافية			
Alexandria	الإسكندرية	hope (d)	يأمل	friendly	ودود
together	معًا	page	صفحة	great	عظيم
fantastic	رائع	really	حقًا أَنَّا	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ
history	التاريخ	most (of)	معظم	aged	بالغ من العمر

Languag	ge Expressions		اللغوية	التعبيرات	= =
go	shopping	يذهب للتسوق	begin	homework	يؤدى الواجب المدرسي
play/ wat	یاضیة sports یاضیة	يلعب/يشاهد ألعابًا ر	do Þ	things	يفعل أشياء
make	▶ a decision	يتخذ قرارًا		activities	يؤدى أنشطة



Prepositions			ف الجر	حرو
next to	بجوار	decide to + inf.	يقرر <mark>ان</mark>	help with يساعد في
move to	ينتقل إلى	frightened of	خائف من	on a birthday في عيد ميلاد
drive from t	0 يقود من إلى	at the end of	فى نھاية	in the morning في الصباح

Words and Opposit	es <u>L</u>	مات وعكسه	الكا		
start school يبدأ الدراسة	finish school ينمى الدراسة	before	قبل	after	بعد
the same نفس الشيء	different مختلف	hungry	جوعان	full	شبعان

Con	njugations of Irregula	تصريف الافعال غير اا		
	Present	Past simple	Past participle	
mean	يعنى	meant	meant setting of	
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	
take	يأذذ/يستغرق	took	taken	
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven	
buy	يشترى	bought	bought	
know	يعرف	knew	known	
sit	يجلس	sat	sat	

Language Notes



ىستفرق

• It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo to the new one.

شخص + for + شيء + buy

یشتری ... ل

Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform for me.

called

الذي يسمى/ يدعى

I sat next to a boy called Sami.

feel + adj.

Adam felt nervous before he started his new school.

Who with?

مع من؟

- Who did you go shopping with?
 - I went shopping with my dad.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I went to the supermarket to buy some groceries my mother.
 - a) on

- b) in c) for d) at

- 2. My best friend, Ali, is very kind.
 - a) call
- b) called
- c) to call
- d) calls
- 3. The homework was very difficult, so I nervous.
 - a) felt
- b) failed
- c) filled
- d) fell



Reading



Pre-reading question:

- Where's Adam's new house?

1. Read Adam's diary. What do you think the word nervous means and why does Adam feel this?

SB page 4

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday, our family moved to⁽¹⁾ our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

- ينتقل إلى (1)
- زی مدرسی (2)
- ودود (3)
- عصبی/متوتر (4)
- مقصف المدرسة (5)
- رائع (6)
- حمام سباحة (7)

Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform (2) for me. I hope students are friendly (3) in my new school!



Tuesday 10th May

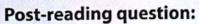
Today, I went to my new school. I was quite nervous (4), but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen (5).



3. Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic (6) weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then, Dad and I went to the sports centre. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool (7).



- When did they go to the sports centre?

Language

1. Complete Nahla's diary with the correct past tense form of the verbs in brackets. WB page 71

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday and her family took us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I didn't go on the big wheel, but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

Life Skills

- 1. Do all the people in your family always want to do - هل كل الأشخاص بعائلتك يريدون فعل نفس الأشياء؟ ?the same things
- 2. What do you do when people want to do different things? - ماذا تفعل عندما يريد أشخاص فعل أشياء مختلفة؟
 - a. Say you only want to do what you want to do.
 - b. Decide to do what most of you want to do.
 - c. Work with your group to add a third option.
- 3. Read about Sara's family. Where should they go and what activities should they do in the morning and the afternoon on Sara's birthday? Work in pairs and make a decision.
 - Mum likes playing sports, but she does not like watching sports.
 - Nadia, aged five, is frightened of the dark. She cannot swim. She loves animals.
 - Dad likes science. He likes to eat out.
 - Sara likes history and she likes playing games.



- They should go to the swimming pool.

* No, they can't go there because Nadia can't swim.







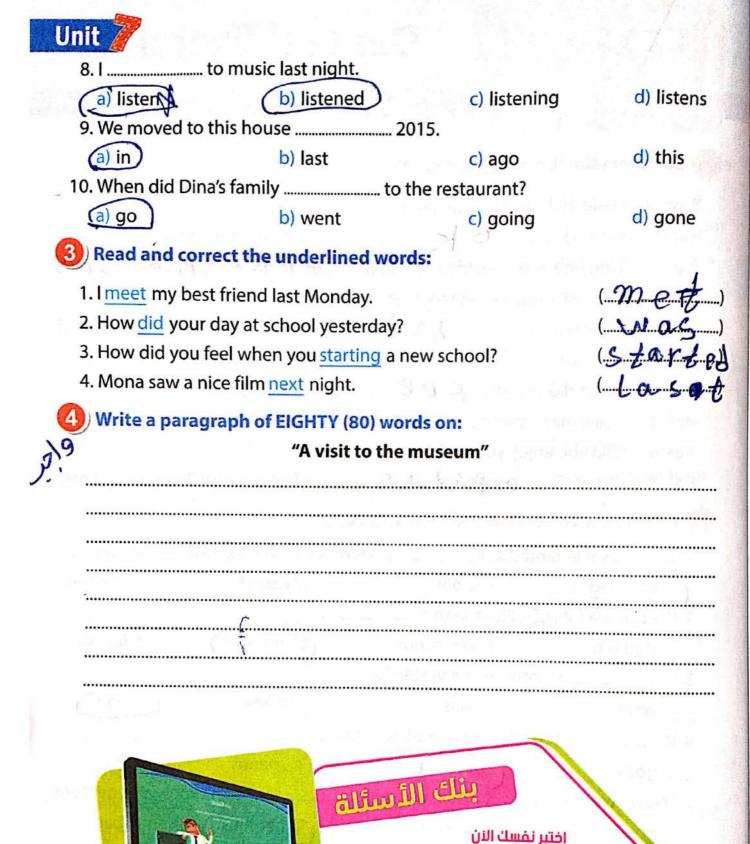
Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. My brother likes	s swimming, so he goes	to the swimming	twice
a week.			
a) hall	b) pool	c) gym	d) aquarium
2. My father's friend	d bought a new house. H	le to it t	wo months ago.
a) moved	b) rode	c) stayed	d) swam
3. I can't see anyth	ing because it's very		
a) cold	b) light	c) dark	d) hot
4. At school, childre	en like to buy many thir	igs from the school	
a) canteen	b) library	c) lab	d) hall
5. Students should	wear their	when they go to sc	hool.
a) timetable	Market and the second		d) uniform
6. We can't talk to	our father when he is ve	ry	
a) nervous	b) good	c) dark	d) happy
7. Most children ar	e of dogs	and the second	
a) brave	b) bad	c) frightened	d) good
8. My father has a c	ar. He always	me to school.	
a) rides		c) goes	d) gives
9. We	our last weekend whe	n we went to the funf	air.
a) saw	b) bought	c) enjoyed	d) looked
10. I had a	weekend. It was a l	ot of fun.	
a) terrible	b) bad	c) fantastic	d) boring
11. My new friend is ve	eryHe help	s me not to feel nervous	in my new school.
a) friendly	b) unfriendly	c) busy	d) lazy
12. I took two hours	my Englis	h homework.	
a) do	b) to do	c) does	d) to doing
13. My sister, Habiba,	always helps my mother	r the ho	ousework. 🧶
a) at	b) by	c) of	d) with

Lessons 1 & 2

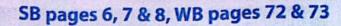
General Exercises

	CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE		
Complete the foll	owing dialogue:		(4)
Basma : Hello, Habi	ba! How are you?		
Habiba : I am (1)	ok		ou?
	oo. I decided to visit the		
	tumn I visited it with m		l ngt I
	rhy (3)		sit the museum?
Habiba: Because II		a three completes that	
Basma :What did y	ou (4) <u> </u>	there?	
Habiba: I saw many	statues.		
Basma : Did you en	joy your visit?		
Habiba: Yes. It (5)	a was	a fantastic visit. H	lave a nice time!
2 Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Yesterday was fan	tastic. Ia fo	ootball match for Moh	ammed Salah.
(a) watched	b) went	c) visited	d) climbed
2. We can see lots of	statues in the		
a) stadium	b) aquarium	(c) museum)	d) funfair
3. l a ma	ths lesson yesterday.		
a) went	b) was	c) made	(d) had
4. It ten	minutes to walk to sch	ool.	Sec. of
a) goes	b) takes	c) spends	d) has
5. Today, I went to my	new school. I was quite .	l didn't kn	ow anyone there
a) good	b) happy	c) nervous	d) bad
6. Most children are .	of the dark		
a) scary	(b) frightened	c) happy	d) sad
7. We went to the spo	orts to play	y sports.	
a) circle	b) middle	c) music	(d) centre



مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية من خلال بوابة الأضواء التعليمية

ادخل على: www.aladwaa.com





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	3	فردات الرئيسيا	الم	
interview حوار/ مقابلة	sailor	بحًار	işland	جزيرة
adventure story قصة مغامرة	nearby	مجاور/ قريب	trumpet	بوق
عاصفة storm	dead	میت	band	فرقة موسيقية
موسیقار/ عازف	prefer (red)	يفضل		(58) 158) F
مضغوط stressed	terrible	رهيب/ فظيع	The River William	
Турез	of music	وسيقى	أنواع الم	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH
jazz موسيقى الجاز	opera	الأوبرا	classical	كلاسيكى
موسيقى البوب pop	rock	موسيقى الروك	traditional	تقليدى

Additional Voc	abulary	ā.	تفردات الإضافيا		An gen
type/ kind	نوع	notebook	كراسة/ دفتر	person	شخص
discuss (ed)	يناقش	diary entry	سجل اليوميات	arrive (d)	يصل
one day	ذات يوم	alone	بمفرده	coconut	جوزة الهند
delicious	لذيذ	rain (ed)	تمطر	cave	كمف
warm	دافئ	rocks	صخور	What date?	ما تاريخ؟



Language Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوية	
play be the piano	يعزف البيانو	you all	انتم جميعًا
have popinions about	لدية آراء عن	make ▶ sure	عاكد

Prepositions			ف الجر	حرو
talk about	يتكلم عن	write down	يدون	مانوع؟ ! What type of
in each + اسم مفرد	في كل	share with	يشارك مع	without بدون
on the island	على الجزيرة	happen to	يحدث ل	walk along يمشى بامتداد
on the beach	على الشاطئ	look for	يبحث عن	through a jungle خلال الأدغال

Words a	nd Opposit	es		لمات وعكسها	धा)—		
rise	يرتفع	fall	يمبط	remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
cold	بارد	hot	حار	wet	مبلل	dry	جاف

Conjugations o	f Irregula	dمة r Verbs	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتد
Present		Past simple	Past participle
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
sink	يغوص	sank	sunk
find	يجد	found	found

Language Notes

like best

یحب آگثر شیء

• Marvin likes jazz music best.

learn + to + inf.

يتعلم أن

• He learned to play the piano when he was young.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. You should learnclose the door softly.
 - a) at

- b) on
- c) in
- d) to

- 2. My brother likes computer games
 - a) better
- (b) best
- c) good
- d) worse



Lesson

1. Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar. Which four types of music do they talk about?

SB page 6



Interviewer: Marvin Allstar is a famous musician(1). He writes

songs and plays⁽²⁾ in a band⁽³⁾. Hello, Marvin,

what type (4) of music do you like?

Marvin : Hello. Well, I like jazz (5) music best. I play

the trumpet (6) in a jazz band.

Interviewer: The trumpet? When did you learn to play

the trumpet?

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano

first when I was four, and I moved on to the

trumpet at 12. I like the sound of the trumpet.

Interviewer: Amazing! Do you like pop (7) music?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock⁽⁸⁾ music. But I quite like

traditional (9) music.

Post-listening question:

- When did Marvin learn to play the trumpet?

يعزف (2)

فرقة موسيقية (3)

نوع (4)

بوق (6)

موسيقي البوب (7)

موسيقي الروك (8)

موسيقى تقليدية (9)

SB page 8



Reading

قصة مغامرة (1)

بخار (2)

عاصفة رهيبة (3)

جزيرة قريبة (4)

سجل/مفكرة (5)

بمفرده (6)

جوزة الهند (7)

.....

لذيذ (8)

- كهف (9)
- دافئ (10)
- غابة (11)
- صخور (12)

Pre-reading question: - Who is the writer of Robinson Crusoe?

1. Read about Robinson Crusoe. What did Crusoe want to find?

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story⁽¹⁾ by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor⁽²⁾. One day his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm⁽³⁾.

Crusoe swam to a nearby island⁽⁴⁾, but there

were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary (5) of what happened to him on the island.

18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today, I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone (6). This afternoon I found a dead fish and ate it, but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!



19th December

I found a coconut (7) on the beach today. It was delicious (8). It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave (9). I want a warm (10) place to sleep. I walked through a jungle (11) and there were some rocks (12), but no caves.



20th December

I found a cave!!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Robinson Crusoe was happy on the island? Why? Why not?



Vocabulary Exercises

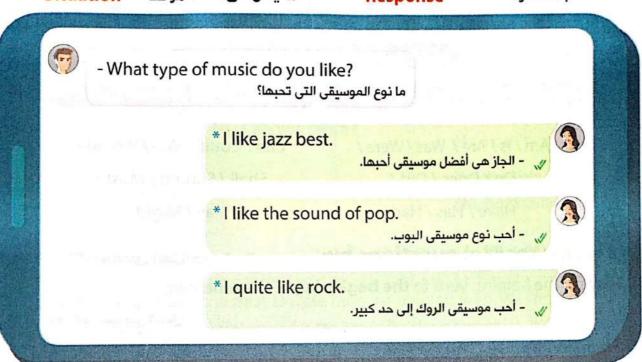
	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	
	1. He is a great	He plays the piano v	vell.	
	a) waiter	b) musician	c) sailor	d) worker
	2. My uncle plays the	oiano in a famous		
	a) bend	b) band	c) pond	d) pound
	3. My father likes to lis	ten to music. I	He likes old songs.	
	a) traditional	b) pop	c) jazz	d) rock
	4. He likes working on	ships. He wants to be a	. Alt end	
	a) waiter	b) seller	c) customer	d) sailor
	5. My mother always a	dvises me to buy things	fromshops	S., 9550a
	a) nearing	b) nearby	c) nearest	d) nearly
	6. Most young people	read stories. T	hey are exciting.	
	a) culture	b) sad	c) bad	d) adventure
	7. Crusoe's ship sank b	ecause of a terrible	the ', thus presult or	
	a) island	b) storm	c) jungle	d) heat
	8. The police found a	man by the sea	.They didn't know wl	no he was.
	a) did	b) died	c) dead	d) die
	9. Crusoe's ship	and he swam to a ne	arby island.	
	a) thank	b) sank	c) fell	d) dropped
1 (0. It rained last night ar	nd I was cold and	KA HISLINGERY	
	a) wait	b) wet	c) dry	d) hot
11	I. Robinson Crusoe is a s	story Daniel D	efoe.	
	a) with	b) by	c) for	d) of
2	2. I enjoy walking	the beach.		
	a) with	b) long	c) a long	d) along



Ask and answer about favourite music

السؤال والإجابة عن الموسيقى المفضلة

جملة الرد Response ما يقال في هذا الموقف Situation



Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Hello, Ahmed. What did you do yesterday?

Sami : I listened to (1)......

Ahmed: Really! Do you (2)..... music?

Sami : Yes, of course.

Ahmed: What (3)..... of music do you like?

Ahmed: 1 (5)...... like jazz.

Sami : Jazz is not my favourite.

Ahmed: Who's your favourite musician?

Sami : Marvin Allstar.





Questions

How to form a question:

كيفية تكوين السؤال:

Types of questions

أنواع الأسئلة

أولاً: السؤال بمعنى هل (Yes/No question): (هو عبارة عن سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص)

Yes/No questions

الأفعال المساعدة Helping verbs

الأفعال الناقصة Modal verbs

Am / Is / Are / Was / Were /

Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had Can / Could / Will / Would /
Shall / Should / Must /
May / Might

We form (Yes/No) questions by:

نكون السؤال بمعنى (هل) عن طريق:

1. Moving the helping verb to the beginning of the sentence:

١. تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل:

1. Verb " to be" —		
الجملة Sentence	السۋال Question	الإجابة Answer
Ali is watching TV.	ls Ali watching TV?	Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.
I'm okay.	► Are you okay?	Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
They are teachers.	➤ Are they teachers?	Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

(Am / Is / Are) يتبعها الفاعل ثم اسم أو صفة أو فعل مضاف إليه (ing).



2. Verb "to have" — الجملة Sentence	السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer
I have got a phone.	► Have you got a phone?	Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
He has got a jacket.	► Has he got a jacket?	Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.

(Have / Has) يتبعها الفاعل ثم التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.).



How was your weekend?

2. Moving the modal verb to the beginning of the sentence:

٢. تقديم الفعل الناقص على الفاعل:

الجملة Sentence	السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer
They will arrive tomorrow.	▶ Will they arrive tomorrow?	Yes, they will. No, they won't.
She would like juice.	▶ Would she like juice?	Yes, she would. No, she wouldn't.
Ican swim.	▶ Can you swim?	Yes, I can. No, I can't.
Sami should study hard.	▶ Should Sami study hard?	Yes, he should. No, he shouldn't.

للحظان كل الأفعال الناقصة يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.



3. The **present simple** and the **past simple** have **no** helping verb. We form questions by adding the helping verbs Do/Does for the present simple and Did for the past simple:

٣. الجمل في زمن المضارع أو الماضي البسيط لا تحتوي على فعل مساعد، لذلك نستخدم (Do/Does) مع المضارع البسيط ونستخدم (Did) مع الماضي البسيط.

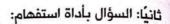
4. Verb "to do" الجملة Sentence		السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer
They live in Cairo.	>	Do they live in Cairo?	Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
Ahmed likes English.	>	Does Ahmed like English?	Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
Aya made a cake.	>	Did Aya make a cake?	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

لاحظان (Do / Does / Did) يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.



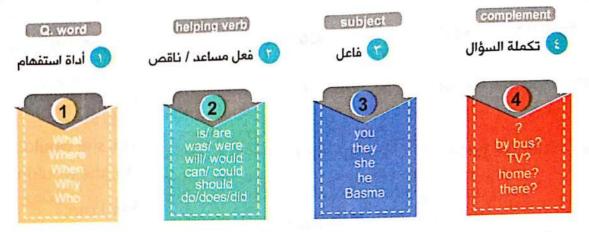
The voice usually rises at the end of the question.

يرتفع الصوت عادة في نهاية السؤال بـ (هل).





- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالتالي:



- ادرس أدوات الاستفهام التالية:

Question word	Usage	Question word	Usage
سا/ ماذا What	للسؤال عن غير العاقل	کیف How	للسؤال عن الوسيلة والطريقة أو الشعور
ما الوقت What time	للسؤال عن الوقت	کم عدد How many	للسؤال عن العدد
ای/ ایهما Which	للتخيير كحدد وم عمد	کم کمیة How much	للسؤال عن الكمية
متی When	للسؤال عن الزمن	كم مدة How long	للسؤال عن المدة
Where اين	للسؤال عن المكان	کم مرة How often	للسؤال عن عدد المرات
Why لماذا	للسؤال عن السبب	من Who	للسؤال عن العاقل

- هناك جمل يكون بها فعل مساعد أو ناقص فيتم تكوين السؤال كالتالى:

Sentence	Question
Mona was at the cinema yesterday.	- When was Mona at the cinema?
I'd like to have fish.	- What would you like to have?
They were playing football at the club.	- Where were they playing football?

How was your weekend?

) إذا كانت الجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط:	إذا كانت الجملة ليس بها فعل مساعد نشتق (do / does)
- Ola goes to school on foot.	- How does Ola go to school?
- I always play tennis on Mondays.	- How often do you play tennis?
: (أما إذا كانت الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم (did
- Salma bought a new laptop last week.	- When did Salma buy a new laptop?
- My family went to Alexandria last summer.	- Where did your family go last summer?

لاحظ التحويلات الآتية:

Note	Question	Answer
you (فاعل) → I / We	- How do you go to school?- How do you go to school, boys?	I go to school by bus.We go to school by bus.
you (مفعول) → me / us	What did Mr Ali give you,Bido?What did Mr Ali give you,girls?	- He gave me a prize He gave us presents.
your → My / Our	- What's your name?- What's your father's job, children?	- My name's Basmala.- Our father is a teacher.
are you → I am / We are	- Where are you going? - Where are you going, boys?	- I am going to school We are going to school.
were you → I was / We were	- What were you doing, Ali? - What were you doing, boys?	- I was studying We were playing.



Language Exercises

1		nswer from a, b, c or o		- 10
	1. A: do you lik	e fruit? B: I like fruit be	cause it's good for m	ne. WB
	a) Who	b) Why	c) What	d) Where
	2. A: Whenyou	ı play tennis? B: I play i	t on Fridays.	
	a) are	b) did	c) do	d) were
	3. A: often doe	es he play tennis? B: He	plays tennis twice a	week.
	a) What	b) Which	c) When	d) How
	4. A: you like ja	azz? B: No, I don't like ja	azz, but I like pop.	WB
	a) Are	b) Do	c) Did	d) Have
	5. A: your Engl	ish teacher? B: Mr Wali	d is my English teach	er.
	a) Who's	b) Who	c) How	d) How is
	6. A: you ride a	a bike? B: No, but I can f	fly a kite.	
	a) Were	b) Are	c) Have	d) Can
	7 do you com	e to school? B: I come t	o school by bus.	WB
	a) When	b) Why	c) How	d) Who
	8. A: sits next t	to you? B: Nader sits ne	xt to me.	
	a) Who	b) Who is	c) Who does	d) Who has
E	Read and correct the	e underlined words:		
	1. A: What time is it? B: I	t <u>was</u> quarter past ten.	() SB
	2. A: When did you go to	the sports centre? B: I	go there four days a	go.
			() SB
	3. A: Have you got a new	v jacket? B: No, I <u>don't</u> .	() SB
	4. A: Can she swim? B: Ye	es, <u>we</u> can.	()
	5. A: How <u>is</u> George feel?	? B: He's okay.	()
	6. Did your hotel near th	e beach?	()
	7. Why you phoned me?	278-3	()

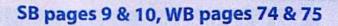
Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

			The second secon
 Listen and choos 	e the correct answer fro	om a, b, c or d: ابتا	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الك
1. What is the text	about?		
a) Sports.	b) Music.	c) Art.	d) History.
2. What type of mu	usic do the old like?		
a) Soft.	b) Slow.	c) Soft or slow.	d) Loud or soft.
3. What type of mu	usic do the young like?		
a) Soft.	b) Slow.	c) Soft or slow.	d) Loud or fast.
4. A: What is music	c? B: It's a way to calm a	nd	
a) play	b) work	c) taste	d) relax
Read the follow	ring, then answer the o	uestions:	
Robinson Cruso	e is an adventure story	by Daniel Defoe. Ro	binson Crusoe was
	32. One day, Crusoe saw		
	did the same and boarde		
high that the ship	sank. Crusoe found hims	self alone on an island	d. He lived there for
many years. He liv	ed alone for twenty-six y	ears until <u>he</u> found so	ome people. Crusoe
made a boat. Crus	oe spent thirty-five year	s on the island. One	day an English ship
arrived. He went b	oack to England with a m	an called Friday.	
A) Answer the follow	wing questions:		
	age about?		
	ory is Robinson Crusoe?		
	to England with Crusoe		
	ct answer from a, b, c o		
4. The underlined	pronoun "he" refers to		
a) Defoe	b) Crusoe	c) Friday	d) his friend
5. Crusoe spent	years with his f	riends on the island	
a) nine	b) twenty-six	c) thirty-five	d) eight
6. The word board	<i>led</i> means		
a) sank	b) drove	c) got on	d) got off



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. My father likes traditional music d) the better c) better b) best a) good 2. My older brother has a/an for a new job. d) review c) class b) interview a) meeting 3. There are many of music like jazz, rock and pop. d) types c) pieces b) notes a) sounds 4. My sister doesn't like to her toys with us. d) give c) share b) take a) have 5. Crusoe wrote a of what happened to him on the island. d) book c) song b) diary a) dairy 6. ! lost my pen, so I tried to lookit. d) in b) after c) at a) for 7. Ais a hole inside a mountain. d) cave c) hill b) valley 8. Where did you last weekend? d) goes c) went b) going a) go 9. A: Do you have a maths lesson today? B: Yes,do. c) we d) you b) she a) they 10. A: you got a phone? B: Yes, of course. b) Did a) Have Read and correct the underlined words: 1. A: Do you go to the park? B: No, I didn't. 2. A: Do you happy? B: Yes, I am. 3. A: What music did he like? B: He likes pop. 4. A: Who goes with you? B: My mum went with me. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: "A story you liked"



Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ry	بة	فردات الرئيس	الما	
olives	زيتون	pepper	فلفل	theatre	المسرح
go downstairs	ينزل للأسفل	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	have a barbecu	اe لديه حفل شواء
windy	كثير الرياح	hope (d)	يأمل	musical instrun	nent آلة موسيقية
A place	Import	ant adjectives	امة	صفات ه	1. 164
great	عظيم	terrible	فظیع / کریه	interesting	شيق
fantastic	رائع	OK	لا باس به	bad	ئىس

Additional V	ocabulary		بقردات الإضافية	الم	7
baby brother	أخ رضيع	so tired	متعَب جِذًا	laptop	لاب توب
feelings	مشاعر	thoughts	أفكار	opinions	آراء
include (d)	يتضمن/يشمل	doodles	رسومات	What happened?	ماذا حدث؟

Lang	guage Expres	ssions	التعبيرات اللغويا	
do	maths h	omework يؤدى واجب الرياضيات المنزلي	stop ▶ working	يتوقف عن العمل
take	▶ a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية	drop ▶ the phone	يُسقط الهاتف

Prepositions		حروف الجر	Laver-F at
for breakfast	من أجل/على الإفطار	try to + inf.	يحاول أن
in the afternoon	بعد الظهر	plan to + inf.	يخطط أن
with olives	بالزيتون	A46125, Fee	a Deigo



Words and Opposites			الكلمات وعكسها	THE WAR IN	
expensive غالى الثمن	cheap	رخيص	downstairs الطابق الأسفل	upstairs e	الطابق العلوز

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Pres	ent	Past simple	Past participle
wake up	يوقظ	woke up	woken up
lose	يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
break	یکسر	broke	broken

Language Notes

although

على الرغم من (للتعبير عن التناقض)

d) although

- The pizza was really good, although it was cheap.
- It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework.

لأن (توضح السبب)

- My weekend was terrible because my team lost 5 2.
- His ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I went to my school yesterday, I was tired.
 - a) but b) so c) because
 - 2. Yesterday, I my homework in the evening.
 - a) did b) liked c) had d) walked
 - 3. Last Friday, we went to the museum, but it was
 - a) open b) happy c) started d) closed

Write it right

How to write about a terrible / fantastic day کیفیة الکتابة عن قضاء یوم به أحداث سیثة / رائعة

- Yesterday was a (صفة) day.
- I woke up at (الساعة).
- I went to school late / on time.
- I could / couldn't do my homework because it was really easy / difficult.
- My teacher was / wasn't angry with me.
- I was happy / unhappy.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:

- a topic sentence
- supporting sentences
- a concluding sentence

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:

- جملة رئيسية
- جمل داعمة للموضوع
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة)

Example

A terrible day

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school. I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework, but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother had a fever. We took him to the hospital and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night and I couldn't do my homework. What a terrible day!

your turn:	2	:ورك الآن:
	"A good day you had"	
Yesterday, was	s a good day	



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- How was Hisham's weekend?

- Listen to three people talk about their weekend.Match the person to the photos.
- 1

1) SB page 9

Woman: Hi, Lina. How was your weekend?

Lina : Oh, it was terrible (1).

Woman : Oh dear, what happened?

Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium.

It was terrible because my team lost 5-2.

Then, I took a selfie but I dropped my

mobile phone and it broke.

Woman : Oh dear!

2)

Man : Hi, Hisham. How was your weekend?

Hisham: It was great because I went to the bowling

alley(2) with my cousins. Then we went to

a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives (3) and pepper (4). The pizza was really good,

although it was expensive.

3)

Woman 2: Hi, Judy. How was your weekend?

Judy: It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots

of homework. But I went to the theatre (5) in

the evening.

Post-listening question:

- Why was Lina's weekend terrible?



فظیع (1)

زيتون (3)

فلفل (4)

المسرح (5)

صالة البولينج (2)





Reading

Pre-reading question:

- Why did Dalia go to the shop?

1. Read Dalia's diary and the writing tips. What was her opinion of the terrible day? Why?

SB page 10

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible⁽¹⁾ day! My baby brother ⁽²⁾ woke^(a) me up at 5 am! I^(b) was so tired⁽³⁾ then. I went downstairs⁽⁴⁾ for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. So Mum asked me to go to the shop, but it was closed⁽⁵⁾ because it was only 6.30 am!

Then^(c) I tried to do my maths homework, but my laptop stopped working and I lost all my work. We planned to have a barbecue⁽⁶⁾ in the afternoon, but it was very windy⁽⁷⁾. We could not have it! I **hope**^(d) tomorrow will be a better day!



- فظيع (1)
- أخ رضيع (2)
- مرهق (3)
- نزل للأسفل (4)
- مغلق (5)
- حفلة شواء (6)
- كثير الرياح (7)



Post-reading question:

- Why couldn't Dalia do her homework?

Writing tips

- a. Use the past tense (most of the time).
- b. Use the first person (I or We).
- c. Write things in the order that they happened.
- d. Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.
- e. Include pictures and doodles.



Listening

Pre-listening question: - What did Khaled do last week?

3. What do you think the people said in the following situations? Use expressions from Exercise 2. Then listen and check your answers. WB page 74

1)

: I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because Judy

we played all my favourite games!

2)

Khaled: I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although

it was not her best book.

3)

Marwa: My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go

two kilometres! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

4)

: We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although Hany

I didn't understand every word!

Post-listening question: - How long did it take to go to the park?

Reading |

1. Read Amir's diary and complete with capital letters, full stops or WB page 75 exclamation marks (!).

Saturday 13th July

Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 am and had breakfast. Then, I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey, I enjoyed reading my favourite book



in the car. We arrived very late, but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around, but we stayed in the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

Lesson

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The piano is a music	cal	the same that the	The state of the s
a) equipment	b) machine	c) instrument	d) whiteboard
2. You can fly your kite	e when it's		
a) windy	b) sunny	c) hot	d) cold
3. I couldn't buy any ju	uice because the shop	was	
a) cheap	b) high	c) open	d) closed
4. I dropped my mobi	le phone and it	working.	
a) finished	b) stopped	c) ended	d) changed
5. I had a nice pizza	olives and pe	pper.	
a) on	b) of	c) at	d) with
6. I watched a wonde	rful play for Adel Ema	m in the	
a) theatre	b) museum	c) gym	d) temple
7. We planned to	a barbecue in th	ne afternoon but it wa	as very windy.
a) make	b) take	c) have	d) eat
8. Yesterday was a ter	rible day because I	my mobile.	
a) went	b) lost	c) missed	d) finished
9. We down	stairs to study in a qui	iet place.	
a) have	b) take	c) see	d) go
10. I can't buy this table	et. It's too		
a) cheap	b) wonderful	c) nice	d) expensive
l 1. In my, the	match was exciting.		ar tegu ida, e d 🍣
a) opinion	b) think	c) view	d) sight
12. Our classroom has i	many things	. the whiteboard.	-
a) containing	b) including	c) opening	d) closing





Responding to past events

الرد على أحداث فى الماضى

ما يقال في هذا الموقف Situation

Response

جملة الرد



- We cannot use (very) with strong adjectives (e.g. terrible, fantastic) but we can use (really): It was really terrible!



- لا يمكن استخدام (very) مع الصفات القوية بينما يمكننا استخدام (really).



(A)	Complete	the	fol	lowing	dia	loque:
-----	----------	-----	-----	--------	-----	--------

Rami	: What did you do last weekend, Mohaned	randor este estate part 👸
Mohaned	: Oh, I had a great time!	
Rami	: Where (1)	
Mohaned	: I went to the football stadium with some	friends.
Rami	: That sounds like fun. What (2)	
	the match like?	
Mohaned	: It was (3)	interesting. What about
	you? Did you go anywhere?	
Rami	: No, I (4)	. go anywhere all weekend
	I just stayed home.	
Mohaned	: (5) did y	ou do at home?
Rami	: I studied for the English test.	
Mohaned	: Our English test? I forgot all about that!	
Comple	te the following dialogue:	
	ello, Kamal.	

Kamal: Hello, Reda. Reda : How (1)...... your day? Kamal: It was (2)...... Reda : Oh no. (3).....? Kamal: Because I lost my mobile phone. Reda: Where (4)......you lose it? Kamal: In the metro station. Reda: 1(5)......you'll find it soon. Kamal: I hope that, too.

Lessons 5&6

General Exercises

d) climb

	_ 6 00 C			not statistically and
1 Com	plete the follo	wing dialogue	le pega sout charge ?	
Aya		. How are you?		APINO PERIODE A
	: Hi. Ava. I'm fi	ne.	and the second of the second o	12
Aya	:How (1)		your last weekend	16
Asmaa	: It was (2)			
Aya			you go?	
Asmaa	153	ok us to a nice re		
Aya	:(4)	W	as the food?	shout you?
Asmaa			delicious. What a	ibout you.
Aya	:I stayed hom			
	: Oh. How terri			
Choo:	se the correct	answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1. Today	was a	day! I got up	late, I didn't have my	breakfast and I missed
the sc	nool bus.		the second and second	
a) fant		b) good	c) terrible	d) scared
2. The	is a r	musical instrum		d) mobile phone
a) trun		b) tablet	c) laptop	d) mobile prioric
		oys when I was	c) lost	d) missed
a) wen		b) did		u) IIII33eu
53	otner always w		at six am.	d) up
a) to	n't do my hom	b) at	e my laptop	
	27.10	b) stopped	c) began	d) went
a) start		what to do a	2. - 0	d) Wellt
a) trave	10.50	b) make	c) plan	d) climb

How was your weekend?

7. I usually	downstairs for br	eakfast with my grai	ndparents.
a) go	b) say	c) visit	d) travel
8it w	as a very long journey	, I enjoyed it.	
a) As	b) Because	c) Although	d) But
9. Our weekend wa	as fantastic	we played all our f	avourite games!
a) but	b) because	c) although	d) however
10. The English boo	k was very good	I didn't unde	rstand every word!
a) although	b) because	c) and	d) so
Read and corre	ct the underlined wo	ords:	
1. The shop was cl	osed because it <u>is</u> only	y 6.30 am.	()
2. I didn't go to sch	nool <u>although</u> it was F	riday.	()
3. He didn't pass th	ne exam <u>because</u> he s	tudied hard.	()
4. A: Where <u>is</u> you	r uncle live? B: He live	s in Tanta.	()
Write a paragra	aph of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	
194 1442	"A day you will	never forget"	want auth, seet was
		eti osta zaligije al	prifipal e l'assume
	samuseathe roses t	a semilific again.	sedications and
	1-916 675 - 178		



Videoscript 🕨

SB page 8

- There are lots of different styles (1) of music such as classical (2), jazz and opera.

Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida, by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871?

Hakim is a very popular⁽³⁾ singer. He sings to modern and traditional music. This style of music is called Geel. Hakim is famous in Egypt and other countries around the world.

You can often hear music at weddings (4) and other celebrations (5).

Egypt also has a lot of traditional music.

You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan.

In traditional music, you can hear instruments (6) like drums and the ney (7). The ney is a type of flute.

Another traditional instrument is the qanun⁽⁸⁾. This is a string⁽⁹⁾ instrument that you play with your fingers.

You can also hear the violin⁽¹⁰⁾ and the oud⁽¹¹⁾. The oud is similar to the guitar⁽¹²⁾, but it usually has more strings.

You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.

Do you like music? What styles of music do you like?

أنواع (1)

موسيقي كلاسيك (2)

محبوب (3)

حفلات الزفاف (4)

احتفالات (5)

آلات موسيقية (6)

آلة الناي (7)

آلة القانون (8)

وتر (9)

آلة الكمنجة (10)

آلة العود (11)

الجيتار (12)





Vocabulary

Vocabulary	غردات	ماا 📗
weekend العطلة الأسبوعية	planetarium مبنى القبة السماوية	football stadium ملعب كرة القدم
funfair الملاهي	متحف museum	wheel
bowling alley صالة البولينج	dolphin الدولفين	school uniform زی مدرسی موحد
exhibition معرض	move (d) to ينتقل إلى	dark مظلم dark
مصبی/ متوتر nervous	swimming pool حمام سباحة	dead میت
school canteen مقصف (كانتين) المدرسة	موسیقار/ عازف musician	prefer (red) يفضل
interview حوار/ مقابلة	مضغوط stressed	terrible رهيب/ فظيع
adventure story قصة مغامرة	بحًار sailor	island جزيرة
عاصفة storm	nearby مجاور/ قریب	classical کلاسیکی
jazz موسيقى الجاز	opera الأوبرا	traditional تقلیدی
موسيقى البوب pop	rock موسيقى الروك	have a barbecue لدیه حفل شواء
go downstairs ينزل للأسفل	whiteboard سبورة بيضاء	musical instrument آلة موسيقية
windy کثیر الریاح	hope (d) يأمل	فرقة موسيقية band
aquarium معرض الأحياء المائية	sports centre مرکز ریاضی	theatre المسرح



Language

1. Past simple tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

Form

التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- Mona watched a nice film last night.
- They had a fantastic weekend in the aquarium.

Past Simple Expressions

Key words الكلمات الدالة - في الماضي in the past - منذ ago - منذ ago - أمس in the past - في الماضي in + سنة في الماضي (in 2010))

2. Questions

1. Yes/No questions:

Helping verb + subject + complement?

- Are you a teacher? Ye
 - Yes, I am.

2. Q. word questions:

Q. word + helping verb + subject + complement?

• When did you go to school?

Speaking

1. Ask and answer questions about past events:

- When did you have breakfast?
- •Where did you go last weekend?
- When was Dina's birthday?

2. Responding to past events:

- How was your weekend?
- What was the (food) like?

- السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث في الماضي:
- I had my breakfast this morning.
- I went to the museum.
- It was in October.

الرد على أحداث في الماضي:

- It was great/ fantastic!/ terrible.
- It was OK.

Test

Based on Unit 7

	Listen and choose the co	orrect answer from a	, b, c or d: الكتاب)	نص الاستماع في ند
	1. Who is Daniel Defoe?			
	a) A waiter.	b) A trader.	c) A writer.	d) A worker.
	2. What was Crusoe's job?			
	a) A baker.	b) A sailor.	c) A doctor.	d) A teacher.
	3. Where did Crusoe swim	?		
	a) To an island.	b) To a ship.	c) To his house.	d) To work.
	4. A: Why did the ship sink	c? B: Because of		Antaria -
	a) rain	b) a storm	c) the sun	d) cold
2	Complete the followin	g dialogue:		WB
,	Mona: Do you like classic	al music, Dina?		
	Dina : Yes, I (1)			
	Mona: When (2)	you las	st go to a concert?	
	Dina : I last went to a co			
	Mona: (3)	you got a ticl	ket for the concert or	Saturday?
	Dina: Yes, I have!			
	Mona : Can (4)			
	Dina : Yes, you can. Are y			
	Mona: Yes, I (5)	! It's fant	astic.	
	Dina : OK. That's great.			

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Dalia,

I can't believe my trip is almost over. I came to Easter Island just two weeks ago. I was with a group from my school. We stayed with families that live on the island. We studied the stone statues, called Moai, and the cave paintings. I really learned a lot. I'm tired, but I loved every minute of my trip. It was a very interesting trip. I hope you'll come with me next time.

Take care.

Margaret

PS: On Easter Island, Iorana means "Hello."



A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did Margar	et go to Easter Island?		
2. Do you think Mar	garet enjoyed her trip	? Why?	Augusta (A)
3. What does the un	derlined pronoun " <u>W</u> e	e" refer to?	
B) Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
4. Margaret went wi	th her		
a) family	b) classmates	c) cousins	d) sister
5. Moai is a name for	r some	on Easter Island.	
a) paintings	b) friends	c) families	d) statues
6 wro	te this text.		
a) Margaret	b) Dalia	c) Easter	d) Iorana
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. I like playing footb	oall, so I asked my fath	er to join a/an	
a) funfair	b) aquarium	c) sports centre	d) planetarium
2. I a h	aircut last Tuesday.		
a) had	b) went	c) did	d) met
3. Yesterday, my fam	ily to a	new house in Alexand	ria.
a) had	b) stayed	c) visited	d) moved
4. Most students are	usually	just before exams.	
a) scary	b) nervous	c) tiring	d) ugly
5. Nadia,	five, is frightened o	of the dark.	
a) age	b) old	c) aged	d) young
6. What did you do	Sara's bi	rthday?	
a) at	b) on	c) in	d) of
7. Peter likes jazz	best. He p	lays the guitar.	
a) music	b) sport	c) match	d) art

How was your weekend?

8. lb	owling this morning		
a) go	b) gone	c) went	d) going
9. When did Dina's	family	. the restaurant?	
a) visiting	b) visits	c) visited	d) visit
10. It was terrible	my team	lost 5–2.	SB
a) although	b) because	c) so	d) but
Read and correct	t the underlined w	ords:	
1. A: When did you	visit the museum? I	B: Two days <u>last</u> .	()
2. <u>Do</u> you got a new	w school bag?		() WB
3. She went to scho	ool <u>because</u> she felt	ill.	() WB
4. How did your las	st weekend?		()
6 Write a paragra	ph of EIGHTY (80) v	vords on:	
	"How you spent	your last weekend"	
	now you spent	your last weekend	
			100 TECHNOLOGY
			ar get at
		co the	
	نواء ا	اسأل الأخ	
	The state of the s	ر لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟	
		بمكنك طرح أسئلتك ثلال خدمة اسأل الأضواء	
		www.aladwaa.com :سلدر	ادخا



SB pages 12 & 13, WB page 77

		Vocabulary
--	--	------------

Lesson

Key Vocabulary	ىية	فردات الرئيب	പി	
amazing مذهل/مدهش	bridge	جسر <i>ا</i> کوبری	city	مدينة
pyramid هرم	tower	برج	tunnel	نفق
دربلاد country/countries	metre (m)	متر	kilometre (km)	كيلومتر
and the second	Question words	with "How"		
كم عرض/اتساع؟ How wide?	How long? 553	كم طول/كم المد	How deep?	كم عمق؟
كم ارتفاع؟ How high?	How old?	كم عمر؟	How many?	كم عدد؟
	Numbers and t	heir words		
hundred	thousand	ألف	million	مليون
more than کثر من	i just under قليل	فقط تحت/أقل با	about	حوالي

Additional Vocabulary	d	المفردات الإضافي	20. 6-20.
guess (ed)	يخمن	building	مبنى/بناء
measurement	قياس	measure (d)	يقيس

Prepositions	حروف الجر
around محول around	on page في صفحة
examples of	under the ground تحت الأرض

Words and	d Opposit	es		ت وعكسها	الكلما		
wide	واسع	narrow	ضيق	high	عالٍ	low	منخفض
under	تحت	above	فوق	long	طویل	short	قصير



Language Notes

feel + adj .:

Adam felt nervous before he started his new school.

hundred - thousand - million

لا تجمع هذه الكلمات إذا جاء قبلها رقم

I have five hundred pounds.

لكن يتم جمعها إذا لم يأت قبلها أرقام.

Thousands of tourists visit Egypt every year.

القياسات

Measurements:

How + adj

• How old are you?

- I'm twelve years old.

• How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?

- It's 1, 642 metres deep.

• How high is the Great Pyramid?

- It's 146 metres high.

• How long is the River Nile?

- It's 6650 kilometres long.

Reading numbers:

قراءة الأرقام

435, 000: four hundred and thirty-five thousand

37, 000,000 : thirty-seven million

• 37, 435,191: thirty-seven million, four hundred and thirty-five thousand, one

hundred and ninety-one

When we do not want to give an exact number, we can also say:

عندما لا نريد إعطاء رقم دقيق، يمكننا أن نقول أيضًا:

حوالي about / أقل بقليل just under / أكثر من about

- 192 = more than one hundred and ninety
- 179 = just under one hundred and eighty
- -2,003 = about two thousand

المكان Place	Country / City البلد / المدينة	مقاییس Measurements
The Tahya Masr Bridge کوبری تحیا مصر	مصر Egypt	- It's about 67, 36 metres wide. - It's about 25, 000 metres long.
The Great Pyramid الهرم الأكبر	Giza - Egypt الجيزة /مصر	- It's 146 metres high.
The Cairo-Alexandria desert road طريق القاهرة الإسكندرية الصحراوى	مصر Egypt	- It's 220 kilometres long.
Lake Baikal بحيرة بايكال	Russia روسیا	- It's 1, 642 metres deep.
Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower برج ساعة أبراج البيت	Saudi Arabia السعودية	- It's 601 metres high.
The Luxor Temple معبد الأقصر	مصر Egypt	- It's just under 3, 500 years old.
The Pyramid of El Castillo هرم آل کاستیو	Chichen Itza تشيتشن إيتزا Mexico المكسيك	- It's 30 metres high.
The Leaning Tower of Pisa برج بيزا المائل	ltaly ايطاليا	- It's just under 850 years old.
The Gotthard Tunnel نفق جوتھارد	Switzerland سویسرا	- It's 2,300 metres under the ground.

Check Point -

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Ten people watched the match at the stadium.
 - a) a thousand
- b) thousands
- c) thousand
- d) million

- 2. Howis the Eiffel Tower?
 - a) many
- b) deep
- c) much
- d) high

Write it right

How to write about an important building تعلم کیفیة الکتابة عن مبنی مهم

- (البله) has a lot of important places.
- The (المبنى) is one of the most important buildings.
- It took (عدد السنوات) to build.
- It opened in (السنة) .
- It's (الرقم) metres high/tall.
- It has (وصف العبني).
- It's a wonderful building.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

Example

The Cairo Tower

Egypt has many amazing places. You can visit some of these places in Cairo like the Cairo Tower and the Egyptian Museum. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to climb to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

Now, your turn:	حان دورك الآن:
"The Great Pyramid"	
Egypt has many interesting part	**************************************
	man la
	0 010



Pre-listening question:

- How many people live in Tokyo?

2. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

- a. The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.
- **b.** The Tahya Masr bridge is about 540 metres long.
- c. More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.
- d. The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.
- e. The Gotthard Tunnel in Switzerland is 2,300 metres under the ground.

4. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.

1

- How long⁽¹⁾ is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
 - It's 220 kilometres long.



- How deep(2) is Lake Baikal in Russia?
 - It's 1, 642 metres deep.

3

- How high⁽³⁾ is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
 - It's 601 metres high.



- How old (4) is the Luxor Temple?
 - It's just under 3, 500 years old.



- How many⁽⁵⁾ people live in Cairo?
 - More than 20 million people.

Post-listening question:

- What do you know about Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower?

SB page 13







كم الارتفاع (3)

كم العمر (4)

كم العدد (5)









Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b, c	or a:	
1. We enjoyed ours	elves last holiday. It was	S	
a) ugly	b) boring	c) amazing	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH
2. The tower is 146	metres		WB
a) high	b) long	c) deep	d) old
3. The bridge is abo	out 25, 000 metres		WB
a) tall	b) high	c) deep	d) long
4 than 37	7, 500, 000 people live i	n Paris.	WB
a) Old	b) About	c) Under	d) More
5. Egypt is a great	in Africa.		
a) city	b) town	c) village	d) country
6. People use a	to cross over a riv	ver.	
a) bridge	b) fridge	c) tower	d) tunnel
7. Ais a h	ole just under the grou	nd.	
a) bridge	b) tunnel	c) pyramid	d) cave
8. We thir	ngs by using the metre	or the kilometre.	
a) weigh	b) count	c) measure	d) guess
9. It's 2.3 kilometre	sunder the gi	ound.	
a) high	b) deep	c) wide	d) old
10. A: Where is	Baikal? B: It's in Ru	ssia.	
a) Lake	b) Sea	c) Tower	d) Bridge
	e is just 3,500	years old.	
a) on	b) more	c) between	d) under
	is the Nile after Aswan	? B: It's 2, 500 metres.	
a) tall	b) long	c) much	d) high

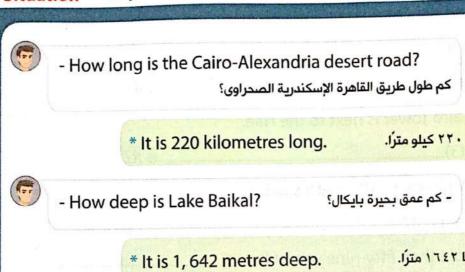


Ask and answer about measurements السؤال والإجابة عن القياسات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

حملة الرد





* It's just under 3, 500 years old. إنه أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عام بقليل.



* More than 20 million people live in Cairo. - أكثر من ٢٠ مليون شخص.

- How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge? کم عرض کوبری تحیا مصر؟

* It's about 67.36 metres wide.

🔊 - حوالی ۱۷٫۳٦ متر.



Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Cairo Tower?

Ahmed: There are sixteen floors. There is a restaurant on the 14th floor.





Vocabulary

Key Vocabu	ary	gim	فردات الرئي	الم	
	In	nportant adjectives	ات هامة	صف	
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ	low	منخفض
modern	حدیث/عصری	narrow	ضيق	noisy وضاء	صاخب/كثير الضو
old	قديم/كبير السن	quiet	ھادئ	tall	طویل
wide	واسع	far	بعيد	easy	سهل
big	كبير	high	عالِ	near	قريب
		Places	أماكن		1444
the Pyramids o	of Giza أهرامات الجيزة	the 6 th October b بر	oridge کوبری ٦ اکتو	Mount Kilimar	njaro جبل کلیمنجارو
the Al Hamra T	ower برج الحمراء	the Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر	the Amazon	نهر الأمازون
the Nile River	نهر النيل	Mount Everest	جبل إيفرست	forest	غابة
the Shanghai Tower برج شنغهای		Qasr El Nil Bridge لنيل	ع کوبری قصر ا	11 10 10	
		Countries and cities	لاد ومدن		1
Brazil	البرازيل	Brasilia	برازيليا	Kuwait	الكويت
Thailand	تايلاند	Bangkok	بانكوك	China	الصين

Additional Vocabulary		المفردات الإضافية			18 juin	
dictionary	قاموس	centre	مركز	visitor	زائر 🗧 🔠 د د	
the countryside	الريف	population	سكان	tourist	سائح	
traffic	حركة المرور	correctly	بطريقة صحيحة			



Prepositions				خروف الجر		
crowded with	مزدحم بـ	far from	بعید من	compare with	يقارن بـ	
at Giza	في الجيزة	easy for	سمَل لـ	the capital of	عاصمة	
away from	بعيدا عن	the centre of	Cairo وسط القاهرة			

	ations of Irregula	Past simple	Past participle
know	يعرف	knew	known
think	يعتقد/يف <mark>ك</mark> ر	thought	thought

Language Notes

make + obj. + adj.

جعل

• This story made us happy.

the

تستخدم مع الأماكي الشميرة

• the Shanghai Tower • the Red Pyramid

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I visited the Pyramids Giza.
 - a) for

b) to

- c) at
- d) with
- 2. My mother bought me a present which me very happy.
 - a) sold

- b) thought
- c) told
- d) made

- 3. Paris is the capital France.
 - a) on

b) at

- c) by
- d) of

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare⁽¹⁾ two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid⁽²⁾ of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid⁽³⁾, which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further away from the centre of Cairo, so it's less crowded⁽⁴⁾ with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.







- يقارن (1)
- الهرم الأكبر (2)
- الهرم الأحمر (3)
- مزدحم (4)
- برج شنغهای (5)
- برج الحمراء (6)
- عواصم (7)
- تعداد السكان (8)

Now let's compare two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower⁽⁵⁾ in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower ⁽⁶⁾ in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So, the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.





Finally, we're going to compare two capital cities⁽⁷⁾. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population⁽⁸⁾ of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.





So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?

Post-listening question:

- What's the capital city of Brazil?





Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Cairo's streets are v	very It take:	s long to go to any place	d) high
a) easy	b) far	c) crowdeu	HA TRANSIT
2. We need to buy so	me more water. This b	oottle is	WB
a) empty	b) crowded	c) tall	d) old
3. Be careful you don	't hit your head on the	e door. It is very	WB
a) busy	b) high	c) low	d) long
4. Only people and bil	kes can go down that r	oad because it is very	
a) long	b) narrow	c) wide	d) low
5. My house isn't far .	my school.		
a) at	b) in	c) on	d) from
6. It's very difficult to	drive your car in the .	of Cairo.	
a) centre	b) tower	c) hall	d) wall
7. The teacher was a	ngry because all the s	tudents were very	WB
a) deep	b) empty	c) long	d) noisy
8. Manyco	me to Egypt to see its	amazing places.	
a) visitors	b) pyramids	c) tours	d) partners
9. The teacher asked	us toa quiz	eritura ni bujeb ataski	
a) work	b) do	c) make	d) say
10. A: What's the	of Brazil? B: It's I	Brasilia.	
a) city	b) centre	c) capital	d) town
11. The Shanghai Towe	r, the Al Hamra Tower a	nd the Cairo Tower are fa	mous
a) buildings	b) cities	c) centres	d) countries
12. We can't swim acro	oss the river here beca	use it is very	WB
a) wide	b) low	c) narrow	d) crowded
13. Theis ve	ry slow. We'll be late.		
a) population	b) pollution	c) traffic	d) centre

The amazing world around us

Language

Comparative of adjectives

مقارنة الصفات

· We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

نستخدم مقارنة الصفات لمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين.

يجب أن نعرف أن الصفات حسب النطق تنقسم إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (Short adjectives) وهي تنطق على مقطع واحد (One syllable):

(high-big-tall-old-wide-nice-hot)

- صفات طويلة (Long adjectives) وهي تنطق على مقطعين أو أكثر (Two or more syllables):

(modern - crowded - amazing - wonderful - interesting)

... adj. + er + than إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد

- Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.

- The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.

Comparative of adjectives مقارنة

الصفات

لعمل مقارنة بين اثنين مختلفين

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع ... less + أقل + adj. + than أكثر من مقطع

- Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.

- The dog is less dangerous than the lion.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- The white tablet is expensive than the black one.

.....)

(large-largerthan)

١- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ 😑 نضيف لها ٢ فقط للمقارنة بين اثنين:



(noisy-noisierthan)

٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى () ثم نضيف er:

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير + er: (hot - hotterthan)

Read and correct the underlined words:

- The blue bag is heavy than the red one.

(.....)

Common Exceptions

استثناءات شائعة

(good) better

- I'm better than Ali at maths.

(bad) worse

- Today's weather is worse than yesterday's.

(far)

further

- Which pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona is	than her sister.		d) as quiet
a) quieter	b) quiet	c) quietest	d) as quiet
2. Ice skating is	skiing.		
a) safest	b) the safest	c) safer than	d) safer
3. Football is more po	pularhand	ball.	and the second
a) this	b) that	c) than	d) then
4. Which month is	, January or Ju	ne?	
	b) colder	c) colder than	d) as cold
5. Tennis is less dang	erous footb	all.	WB
a) this	b) that	c) then	d) than
6. Which building is .	modern?		WB
	b) the more	c) most	d) more
7. Who is, y	ou or your sister?		
a) old	b) oldest	c) older	d) older than
8. London is far from	the seaside, but Oxfo	ord is	
a) far	b) more far	c) more further	d) further
9. Which bridge is	, the 6th Octobe	r bridge or the Qasr El	Nil Bridge?
a) long	b) longer	c) longest	d) longer than
10. Things are going f	rom bad to		
a) worser	b) worse	c) more worse	d) more bad
Read and correct	the underlined wor	ds:	
1. French is difficult t			()
	s <u>more high</u> than we	thought.	() WB
	ally <u>crowded</u> on a Satu		() WB
	a is good than a holida		()
	ummer is even bad th		()
J. The Weather and			-



How to ask and answer questions to make comparisons

كيفية السؤال والإجابة لعمل مقارنات

Situation

ما يقال فى هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?

- أي هرم هو الأطول، الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أم الهرم الأحمر؟



* I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller. أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أطول.



- Which pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo? أي هرم أبعد عن وسط القاهرة؟



* I think the Red Pyramid is further. ر - أعتقد أن الهرم الأحمر أبعد.





- Which one is more crowded with visitors? أي هرم أكثر ازدحامًا بالزوار؟



* I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is more crowded. أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أكثر ازدحامًا.



- Which building is taller, the Shanghai Tower in China, or the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait?

- أي مبنى هو الأطول، برج شنغهاي بالصين أم برج الحمرا بالكويت؟



* I think the Shanghai Tower in China is taller. 🧷 - أعتقد ان برج شنغهاي بالصين أطول.





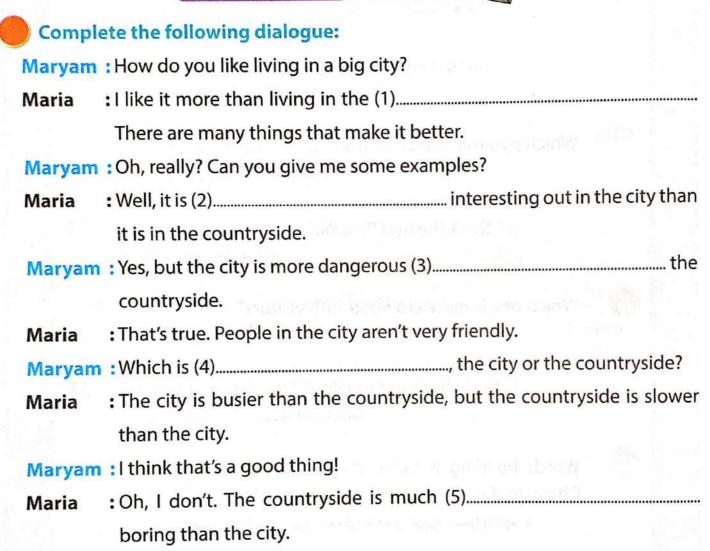
Speaking Notes

نستخدم (Which) بمعنى أي / أيهما للتخيير كالتالى:

Which is (adj. + er) / (more / less+ adj.),?

- Which is easier, English or maths?
- •Which is less interesting, football or squash?

Speaking Exercises

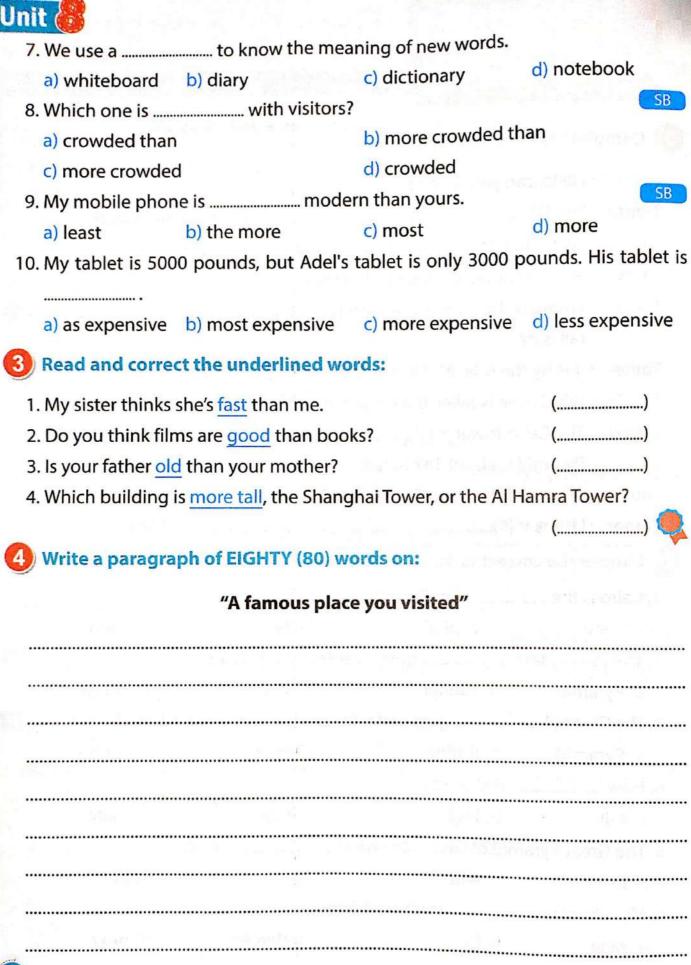


Lessons 1 & 2

General Exercises

		Segm with a most	a Which one is
Complete the	following dialogu	e:	richi potissora il
Tourist : Hello, c	an you speak Englis	sh?	
Tamer : Yes, (1).			n I help you?
Tourist: I want t	to know some infor	mation about some p	laces.
Tamer : Sure. W	/hat would you like	to know?	
Tourist: Where	is the Cairo Tower a	nd (2)	
tall is it			
		(3)	
Tourist: Which	one is taller, the Gre	eat Pyramid of Giza or	the Cairo Tower?
Tamer : The Ca	iro Tower is (4)		The Grea
Pyrami	d is about 147 m ta	II. Traditions very sea	
Tourist: When	did the Cairo Tower	open?	
Tamer : I think	it (5)		in 1961.
Choose the co	orrect answer fron	a, b, c or d:	
	of Egypt.		
a) centre	b) capital	c) city	d) town
2 The Tahya Ma		over the Nile in Cairo	
a) Pyramid	b) Tunnel	c) Tower	d) Bridge
2 The Channel	goes und	er the sea between En	gland and France. 🏻 🍯
a) Pyramid	b) Bridge	c) Tower	d) Tunnel
4. How			
	b) high	c) deep	d) many
a) tall	Part 2 2 2 271-11 - 171	<i>i</i> ded visit	ors.
	b) with	c) of	d) at
a) in			
	from my	c) between	d) next
a) near	b) far	C) DELVICE.	

a) near





SB pages 16, 17 & 18, WB pages 79 & 80



Key Vocabulary		ä	المفردات الرئيسية		36 3	
suspension	مُعلق	cross (ed)	يعبر/يمر على	across	عبر	
glass floor	أرضية زجاجية	achieve (d)	ينجز/يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	
TV show	برنامج تلفزيوني	famous	مشهور	polite	مؤدب	

Additional Vocabulary	بفردات الإضافية	all)
describe (d)	Etruscan shrew حيوان صغير يشبه الفأر	no way
ice skating التزحلق على الجليد بلوح التزلج	land animal حيوان بری	Warraq Island جزيرة الوراق
mountain climbing تسلق الجبل	رياضة التزلج على الجليد skiing	الخشى/يؤسفنى I'm afraid

Language Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوية	0.11
I'm not sure	لست متأكد	the same as	نفس الشيء مثل

Prepositions	حروف الجر			
at sunset في وقت الغروب	think about/of يعتقد بشان	a view of		
in my opinion في رأيي	opinion of/about داٰی فی	proud of فخور بـ		
في التلفزيون on TV	a way of + V+ing طريقة لـ	earts, nw h		



الكلمات وعكسها Words and Opposites			n:		
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح	cheap	expensive dia
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير	شعبی/محبوب popular	unpopular غير محبوب

ظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		تصريف الافعال غير المنتخ	
Present	Past simple	Past participle	
یبنی build	built	built	
feel يشعر	felt	felt	

Language Notes

help + (inf. / to + inf.)

تساعد

More than 4,000 people helped to build (build) the Tahya Masr Bridge.

start + (V + ing / to + inf.)

• Istarted to do (doing) my homework.

enjoy + (V + ing)

Many people enjoy walking across the bridge.

The best time to + inf.

• The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I helped my little sister her English homework.
 - a) does
- b) to do
- c) did
- d) doing

- 2. My brother enjoysvideo games.
 - a) watches
- b) to watch c) watch
- d) watching

Write it right

How to write about "The Tahya Masr Bridge" گیفیة الکتابة عن کوبری "تحیا مصر"

- Egypt is a great country.
- We should be proud of our great country.
- The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge.
- More than (عدد الأشخاص) people helped to build it.
- They started building it in (سنة البدء).
- It opened in Cairo in (وقت الافتتاح).
- It is (العرض) metres wide. It's (العرض) metres long.
- It is the greatest project in Egypt.

Writing tips

Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic. You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing.

- استخدم المفردات التي تلائم الموضوع.
- يمكنك التفكير في المفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

The Tahya Masr Bridge

Egypt is a great country. It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. The Tahya Misr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.

our turn:		رك الأن:
	"A famous bridge")—————
Egypt has many into	eresting places	



Reading and listening



Pre-reading question:

- How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge?

4. Read about the Tahya Masr Bridge and answer the questions.

SB page 16



- معلق (1)
- جزيرة الوراق (2)
- عبر (3)
- أرضية زجاجية (4)
- غروب الشمس (5)
- منظر جمیل (6)

The world's widest suspension (1) bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months.

The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island (2). More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across (3) the bridge. It has a glass floor (4), so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset (5), for a beautiful view (6) of the city.

Post-reading question:

- How long did it take to build the bridge?

Lesson

Reading

2. Complete the text with the superlative form of the words in brackets.

WB page 79

You probably know that whales are the **biggest** animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the **noisiest**?



A whale can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the **fastest** animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h.

حيوان بري (1)

حيوان صغير يشبه الفأر (2)

Insects are the **most dangerous** animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal.

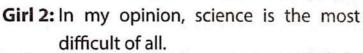
Finally, the **smallest** land animal⁽¹⁾ is the Etruscan shrew⁽²⁾. It looks like a mouse and is the same size as a bee!

Listening

Pre-listening question: - What do you think of Dahab?

1. Listen and complete the sentences.

Girl 1: Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or science?



Boy 1: I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?

Boy 2: I agree. It's also the least crowded.

Girl 3: What's your opinion of ice skating (1)? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing (2)?

Girl 4: I'm afraid (3), I don't agree.

Boy 3: What do you think about the new TV show?

Boy 4: I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

Post-listening question: - Which is easier English or maths?





- التزلج على الجليد (1)
- تسلق الجبال (2)
- أخشى أنني (3)





Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b	, cora:	
1. You can enjoy the	glass in th	ne Tahya Masr Bridge	Jacob Pos
a) floor	b) ground		d) roof
2. People	ivers over bridges.		
a) walk	b) go	c) cross	d) climb
3. The Tahya Masr Bı	idge is the world's w	videst bridg	je.
a) expression		c) information	d) discussion
4. Mohammed Salah	is the most	Arab footballer.	
a) nervous	b) popular	c) dangerous	d) modern
5. You can enjoy wa	king on the Tahya M	lasr Bridge	sunset.
a) in	b) on	c) of	d) at
6. My father usually	watches TV	in the evening.	
a) signals	b) apps	c) shows	d) radios
7. When you give yo	ur opinion about so	mething, you should	disagree
a) politely	b) wrongly	c) surely	d) rudely
8 my opin	ion, Egypt is a great	country.	
a) On	b) Of	c) About	d) In
9. I can't buy this car	because it's very	lt costs a lot	of money.
a) cheap	b) narrow	c) expensive	d) dangerous
10. Ugly is the opposi	te of "".		
a) safe	b) beautiful	c) high	d) noisy
11. I think that Basketh	oall is the most popu	lar sport, but my brot	her
a) agrees	b) disagrees	c) not agree	d) not sure
12. Old, quiet, tall, low			The second secon
a) subjects	b) objects	c) adjectives	d) nouns
13. My grandfather m	ade lots of great	during his life	rangaliya, Mari
a) environments	b) achievements	c) advertisements	d) measurements

Language

The superlative of adjectives صيغة التفضيل العليا

- We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.
 - نستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا لمقارنة أكثر من شيئين.
 - عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين مع الصفات القصيرة نستخدم:

the + الصفة القصيرة + est

Superlative of adjectives المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة

لعمل مقارنة بین اکثر من اثنين مختلفين

- ... the + adj. + est واحد خانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد
- He is the fastest of all.
- Ali is the tallest boy in our class.

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطعthe most / the least + adj. ...

- Salah is the most popular Arab footballer.
- Maths is the least difficult subject.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- This car is expensive car in Egypt.

(large - the largest)

١- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ e نضيف لها st فقط:



٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ y وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف est: (noisy - the noisiest)

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير + est: (hot - the hottest)

Read and correct the underlined words:

-Elephants are big animals.

(.....

Common Exceptions

استثناءات شائعة

the best (good)

- Sami is the best student in class.

(bad)

the worst

- Today's weather is the worst.

(far)

the furthest - The Red Pyramid is the furthest from the centre of Cairo.



Language Exercises

1	Choose the correct	t answer from	a, b,	c or d:
---	--------------------	---------------	-------	---------

1. Who is pe	rson in your family?	NEW YORK STREET	Antestropus Sau 948 A.
	b) tallest	c) the tallest	d) taller
2. In my opinion, my r	num isco	ok in the world.	
a) good	b) better	c) best	d) the best
3. You probably know	that whales are	animals in th	ne world. WB
	b) biggest		d) bigger
4. Did you know that			world? WB
a) noisy	b) noisiest		d) most noisiest
5. Did you know that	fastest ani	mal in the world is	a bird? WB
a) the	b) the most	c) the more	d) the least
6. She bought	cake in the shop.		
a) biggest	b) the biggest	c) the most big	d) big
7. Who is sir	nger in your country	?	
a) famous	b) least famous	c) most famous	d) the most famous
8. My sister is	person in my fam	ily.	
a) young	b) the young	c) the youngest	d) the younger
9. The Nile is	river in the world.		
a) the longest	b) the longer	c) longest	d) longer
10. Going for a meal in	a restaurant is	activity when	it's cold outside.
a) the best	b) best	c) the most good	d) the more good
11. Hala's wearing her	dress toda	ny.	And the store of the state of t
a) more new	b) newer than	c) newest	d) the newest
Read and correct	the underlined wo	rds:	
1. We bought most ex	pensive house in th	ne city.	heaves block
2. In my opinion, histo			()
3. I think motorbikes			() WB
4. My neighbours are			() WB
5. Dina is the <u>clever</u> g	A STATE OF THE STA		()
			()

The amazing world around us

Speaking

السؤال عن وإبداء الرأي Asking about and giving opinion

Situation

ما بقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Arabic? أى مادة هي أصعب في رأيك: اللغة العربية أم اللغة الإنجليزية؟

* In my opinion, English is the most difficult of all. في رأيي اللغة الإنجليزية هي الأصعب على الإطلاق.

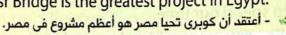




What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge? ما رأيك في كوبري تحيا مصر؟

* I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.







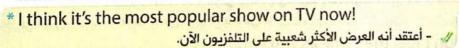
Do you agree that science is easier than maths? هل تتفق أن العلوم أسهل من الرياضيات؟

* I don't agree with you.

🧳 🥒 - أنا لا أتفق معك في الرأي.



What do you think about the new TV show? ما رأيك في العرض التلفزيوني الجديد؟





عدم الاتفاق فى الرأى مع شخص آخر

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

حملة الرد

* I don't feel the same as you about that. . انا لا أشعر بنفس ما تشعر به. . . 🐠 - أنا لا أشعر بنفس ما تشعر به.



* I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.

🥢 - أنا آسف ولكن ليس لدى نفس الرأي.



* I'm not sure about that.

🥠 🎺 - أنا غير متأكد بخصوص ذلك.





Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:
Mona : Hi, Ahmed. I didn't see you all day.
About A Halla Mana Lwas busy with my best friends.
Mona : So Ahmed, (1)do you think
makes a good friend?
Ahmed: Well, I (2)a friend is someone
who is fun to be with.
Mona : Hmfun to be with? Can you give me an example?
Ahmed: I like friends who like to go out and have fun together.
Mona: I'm (3), but I don't agree with that.
Ahmed: (4) my opinion, it is the best way
to spend our time.
Mona : So You mean a friend has to like the same things as you, don't you?
Ahmed: No not really, just that they have a (5)character.
Life Skills
Remember that it is important to be polite when you give your opinion. تذکر أنه يجب أن تکون مهذبًا عند التعبير عن رأيك. Tight (د) the polite ways of disagracing with someone.
Tick (√) the polite ways of disagreeing with someone. اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأي مع شخص ما.
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما.
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما. 1. I don't feel the same as you about that.
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG!
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG! 3. In my opinion,
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG! 3. In my opinion, 4. I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG! 3. In my opinion, 4. I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. 5. What? No way!
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأي مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG! 3. In my opinion, 4. I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. 5. What? No way! 6. I'm not sure about that.
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأى مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG! 3. In my opinion, 4. I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. 5. What? No way!
اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف في الرأي مع شخص ما. 1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that. 2. You are WRONG! 3. In my opinion, 4. I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. 5. What? No way! 6. I'm not sure about that.

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

	1 Listen and choose th	e correct answer from a	a, b, c or d: (هاية الكتاب	(نص الاستماع في ن
	1. How many people h	elped to build the Tahy	a Masr Bridge?	
	a) 40.	1 1		40,000.
	2. How long did it take		Alexander of	
	a) 32 months.	b) 23 months.	c) 13 months.) 30 months.
	3. In which month did	they open it in 2019?		
	a) In April.	b) In March.	c) In May.) In June.
	4. How long is it?			
	a) 514 m.	b) 450 m.	c) 540 m.) 504 m.
	Read the following	, then answer the que	stions:	
	The 382-metre-long	g Qasr al-Nil Bridge, wi	th its two lion statues	at each end,
	crosses over the Nile. I	t's 10.5 metres wide. Th	nere was a bridge in its	place, Gezira
	Bridge, in 1872, but th	ne bridge became too l	ousy, so Cairo needed	a bigger one.
	King Fuad opened Qas	sr al-Nil Bridge in 1933.	The bridge took about	thirty months
	to complete, during t	hat time ferries, boats	and feluccas once ag	gain were the
	main transport to the	island, crossing from th	e east side of the Nile	in front of the
	Semaramis Hotel to th	e other side of Zamalek	. Many people like to	walk along the
	bridge in the evenings	s. You can walk across i	t from the east side to	Gezira Island.
	There are wonderful vi	ews of the river from th	e bridge.	
A	Answer the following	questions:		
	1. What does the unde	erlined word " <u>one</u> " refer	to?	
	2. Who built Qasr al-Ni	il Bridge?		
	3. What is the name of	the hotel mentioned i	n the passage?	u zlere M =-
B)	Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d	THE BOND	
	4. Qasr al-Nil Bridge is	m wide.		
) 382		d) 115
	5. The word "felucca" i			
) big boat	50000	d) big ship
	6. The bridge took abo			•
) two and a half years	c) three years	d) four years
		a rian years	-/ /	100



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. There is a bridge the river. d) a course c) course b) across a) cross 2. I don't like that toy. It's very d) good c) ugly b) modern a) beautiful 3. You should be to your friends. d) ugly c) bad b) impolite a) polite 4. What's your of our new English teacher? d) show c) sight b) opinion a) view 5. The Tahya Masr Bridge has afloor, so you can see the river under your feet! c) glass d) gold b) metal a) wood 6. Evening comes when sets. d) the sun c) sunrise b) sunshine a) sunrays 7. Many people enjoy the beautiful of the Nile. d) cave c) show b) view a) opinion 8. The day at the market is Friday. d) most busy c) busier b) busiest a) busy 9. Some of the buildings in the world are also the most beautiful. d) older c) oldest b) more old a) most old 10. Basmala is one of people I know. b) the most friendly c) the friendliest a) the friendly Read and correct the underlined words: 1. This is the better restaurant I know. 2. Who has the faster car in the city? 3. I think she is still ill. She looks even bad than last week. 4. Friends are important than money. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: "The Tahya Masr Bridge"

SB pages 19 & 20, WB pages 81 & 82

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	ىفردات الرئيسية	مال
he Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصري الكبير	historical objects أشياء تاريخية	treasure کنز
مساحة/ فراغ/ فضاء space	design (ed) يصمم	welcome (d) يرحب بـ
منافسة/ مسابقة competition	entrance مدخل	statue تمثال
city centre وسط المدينة	century (قرن (۱۰۰ عام	تيم/ ذو قيمة valuable
protect (ed) يحمى	column sage	سotorbike دراجة نارية
متر مربع square metre	guide book دليل الإرشاد	writer
website review مقالة نقدية على موقع إنترنت	car park موقف السيارات	مشمس sunny
كم حجم؟ How big?	the Karnak Temple معبد الكرنك	the Hypostyle Hall قاعة الأعمدة
the Valley of the Kings وادى الملوك	Habu Temple معبد هابو	Germany المانيا
the British Museum المتحف البريطاني	collection مجموعة	hieroglyphics اللغة الهيروغليفية
public عام / للجميع	the Rosetta Stone حجر رشيد	the Great Court المحكمة الكبرى

Additional	Vocabulary	ئة	ففردات الإضاف	All)	
article	مقال	during	أثناء	however	ومع ذلك
Ramses II	رمسيس الثاني	main idea	فكرة رئيسية	the internet	الإنترنت
life	الحياة	fountain	نافورة مياه	expressions	تعبيرات

Langua	age Expressions	i	ة اللغوية	التعبيرات	
have	a holiday	يقضى إجازة	get	▶ busier	تصبح أكثر ازدحامًا
show	▶ opinions	يعرض آراء	make	▶ notes	يدون ملاحظات



ک الجر Prepositions			حروا
popular for	مشمور بـ	لاحقا/في وقت لاحق later on	similar to مشابه لـ
popular with	محبوب لدى	allow to يسمح بان	reason for
expect to	يتوقع أن	space for مساحة ل	(be) able to + inf. يكون قادرًا أن
look after	یعتنی ب	for the first time للمرة الأولى	refer to یشیر اِلی

تصریف الافعال غیر المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs					
And the state of t	resent	Past simple	Past participle		
teach	يُعلم/ يُدرس	taught	taught		
have/has	يمتلك/ لديه	had	had		
show	يعرض/ يبين/ يوضح	showed	shown		

Language Notes

However

ومع ذلك (تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض في المعنى)

He is very strong. However, he can't carry this box.

فعل مفرد + اسم، جمع + one of

واحد من

One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Mona got up early., she went to school late.
 - a) So
- b) As

- c) However
- d) Because

- 2. One of the windowsold.
 - a) looks
- b) look
- c) looking
- d) are looking

Write it right



How to write about "Historical places in Egypt" گیفیة الکتابة عن "الأماکن التاریخیة فی مصر".

- Egypt has many historical places which tourists like to visit.
- These places are in many cities like (اسماء المدن).
- The (اسم المكان) has a lot of historical objects.
- The (السم المكان) welcomed its first visitors in (السنة).
- There are other places like (اسم أماكن أخرى).

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الفقرة هي مجموعة الجمل التي تقدم موضوعًا أو فكرة واحدة.

Example

Historical places in Egypt

Egypt has a lot of historical places which tourists like to visit. These places are in many cities like Cairo, Giza, Aswanand Luxor. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of historical objects. They are the most valuable treasures. The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. There are other places like the Valley of the Kings in Luxor, the Karnak Temple and the Habu Temple.

low, your turn:	ن دورك الان:
"The Karn	ak Temple"
Egypt has many historical place	ces.



Reading ____

Pre-reading question: - When did the oldest museum in Cairo open?

2. Read the text. What is the main idea of the article?

SB page 19

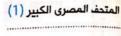
The Grand Egyptian Museum

- 1) The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures (2) on display (3). However, the museum did not have space (4) for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition (5) to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.
- 2) The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors (6) in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old
- museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects (7), more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.
- 3) One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance (8), with its big plants and statues (9). The biggest is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
- **4)** Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to complete the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy.

It is expected to take many years of hard work.

Post-reading question: - Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)?









فراغ (4)

(1/6)



زائرون (6)



مدخل (8)

تماثيل (9)



Reading



Pre-reading question:

- Describe the Hypostyle Hall.

2. Read the text again and answer the questions.

SB page 20

about three of the most interesting places.

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. These are my opinions

The Valley of the Kings⁽¹⁾ in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early because that is the guietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic (2)!" I am sure it gets busier later on during the day.



- وادى الملوك (1)
- مدهش (2)
- معبد الكرنك (3)
- قاعة الأعمدة (4)
- متر مربع (5)
- معبد هابو (6)

The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple (3) . My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall⁽⁴⁾, a 5,000-square-metre⁽⁵⁾ "room" with 134 stone columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.



In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple (6). It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.



Post-reading question:

- What do you think of Habu Temple?



Lesson

Reading ____

Complete the text with the superlative form of these adjectives.

WB page 81

The British Museum

The British Museum⁽¹⁾ in London is the *oldest* public⁽²⁾ museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.

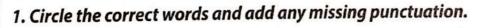


- المتحف البريطاني (1)
- عام (2)
- مجموعة (3)
- حجر رشيد (4)
- اللغة الميروغليفية (5)
- المحكمة الكبرى (6)

The museum has the *biggest* collection⁽³⁾ of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its *most important* objects is the Rosetta Stone ⁽⁴⁾. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics⁽⁵⁾ for the first time.

In my opinion, the **most beautiful** part of the museum is the Great Court ⁽⁶⁾. Its big glass room makes it the **largest** covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000, so it is also the **most modern** part of the museum.

Reading ____



Al Azhar Park is the largest and the most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house.

That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that



park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains, a lake and cafés, too. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here".

Vocabulary Exercises

		answer from a, b, c o		
7	1. The Egyptian Muse	um is full of a lot of		11 de de 12 de la
	a) ugly	b) adventurous	c) historian	d) historical
	2. There are a lot of cle	othes onin	the shop by my ho	use.
	a) display	b) opinion	c) design	d) style
	3. There is a science	at school. I t	hink Ali will win.	
	a) column	b) expression	c) competition	d) punctuation
	4. We should	our visitors and me	et them in a friendl	y way.
	a) finish	b) welcome	c) design	d) leave
	5. My father leaves his	s car in the car		
	a) break	b) brake	c) bark	d) park
	6. The weather is	today. You sho	uld take your sungla	asses.
	a) sunny	b) noisy	c) rainy	d) snowy
	7. The British museu	m has the biggest	of Egyptia	n objects outside
	Egypt.			
	a) teams	b) suspensions		
	8. The Valley of the Ki	ngs in Luxor is one of t	he most	places for tourists
	to visit.			
	a) scary	b) bad	c) popular	d) boring
	9. I will visit my uncle	today. Later	, I'll meet my frien	ids.
	a) on	b) in	c) at	d) of
1	0. Tourists try to find	a to get 6	enough information	n about the places
	they are visiting.			
	a) notebook	b) guide book	c) souvenir	d) postcard
1		anguage of ancient Eg	yptians.	
	a) Hieroglyphics		c) Arabic	d) French
1	2. "GEM" stands for			e e e
	a) The temple at Al		b) The Valley of	the Kings
	c) The Karnak Temp		3 may 2. 12 may	gyptian Museum
	The state of the s			

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

•				
1 Com	plete the fo	llowing dialogue:		
		to Egypt. Is this your f	irst visit to Egypt?	
		ı. Yes. And I'm very ha		
Anas	•(1)	,	places did you	visit here?
Touris	t · L visited th	e Pyramids and the G	irand Egyptian (2)	3 25 3
Anac	· Wowl Fant	tastic How (3)		will you sta
Allas	in Egypt?	tastic. How (5)		Posta Po
Touris	t: I'll stay for	two weeks		
			you going to visi	t other cities?
		m going to visit Luxo		
Anas		es will you visit there?		
		•	16150 3	
lourisi	. I II VISIL LITE	e time in Equat	ppid sith neg medikur	s statistical facility is
_				
2 Cho	ose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. A	is a	period of one hundre	d years.	
	cade	b) century		d) week
		nd Egyptian Museum	and saw many	there.
	asures	b) subjects		
1. Sept. 10 11 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10		oncoming	late?	
a) of	N .	b) at	c) for	d) with
	t put this boo	ok in my bag. There is	n't enough	for it.
a) pie		b) spice	c) peace	d) space
		house with a big		0.6.(9)(96
a) hol		b) cave	c) entrance	d) hill
1/2			advice. It is very	
		b) valuable	c) terrible	
a) hel	piess	D) valuable	Cremble	d) ugly

7. My brother likes writing stories. He wants to be a one day.

c) writer

d) waiter

a) teacher b) worker

The amazing world around us

8. Who'sp	erson in your family?		
a) young	b) more young	c) younger	d) the youngest
9. Mountain climbing	is dangero	ous than swimming	9. h werd may wa- I
a) the more	b) more	c) most	d) the most
10. Which is	difficult subject at sc	hool?	
a) the most	b) the more	c) most	d) more
Read and correct the second	ne underlined words	9. 10	
1. My grandmother is	the <u>older</u> in our famil	y. 10 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14	()
2. You are safe here the	an there.		()
3. It is the large shop in	n our town.		()
4. Boody is good than	Sandy.		()
Write a paragraph	of EIGHTY (80) word	s on:	
	"The Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	
use in the volume second	and the supplies and the	nalpation deptar	Approximate
1900 1 gen	ki magʻashar bayos	i zastone i naturata	
1 12 12 14 14			
1001 905 00 5	a de la companya de l		2
	r representation of the		
	11 10 11 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	in milian akhti szerbk	o attacator en
	ļı		
grand dominate all	and the pri	A STATE OF THE STA	Article and and the second
	1980		An impact falls
THE PERSON NAMED IN	أضاء	محونة اا	and the state of the state of
		a ni užutačuji ag	27019
	ت المميزة	موعة مختارة من المقالا،	
		خلال مدونة الأضواء ل علم: ww.aladwaa.com	
	W	ww.aiauwaa.com.dac	
		/	The second state of the second



Videoscript >

- Do you know about the seven wonders(1) of the ancient world?

People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt.

For many centuries⁽²⁾, this Lighthouse of Alexandria⁽³⁾ was the tallest building ever made.

The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned⁽⁴⁾ boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention⁽⁵⁾.

We use similar technology today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon⁽⁶⁾ were probably in modern day Iraq. These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace⁽⁷⁾.

The Statue of Zeus⁽⁸⁾ was in ancient Greece⁽⁹⁾. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes⁽¹⁰⁾. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.

The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis(11)... and the Tomb of Mausolus.

Time and earthquakes⁽¹²⁾ destroyed⁽¹³⁾ most of these wonders of the world.

After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.

Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains. Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.

Every year, millions of people come to see the pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions⁽¹⁴⁾ anywhere.

For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world. Which building do you like the best? Why?

SB page 20

- عجائب (1)
- قرون (2)
- منارة الإسكندرية (3)
- يحذر (4)
- اختراع (5)
- ددائق بابل المعلقة (6)
- قصر ضخم (7)
- تمثال زيوس (8)
- اليونان (9)
- تمثال رودس (10)
- معبد أرتميس (11)
- (12) נצל
- يدمر (13)
- عوامل جذب (14)

Unit 8 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	فردات الرئيسية	الم
amazing مذهل/مدهش	bridge جسر/کوبری	tunnel نفق
pyramid هرم	tower	kilometre (km) کیلومتر
country/countries بلد/بلاد	metre (m) متر	کم عمق؛ How deep?
كم عرض/اتساع؟ How wide?	كم طول/كم المدة؟	How many? کم عدد؟
كم ارتفاع؟	کم عمر؟ How old?	across عبر
suspension منعلق	cross (ed) يعبر/يمر على	achievement إنجاز
glass floor أرضية زجاجية	achieve (d) ينجز/يحقق	on display معروض/في العرض
the Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصرى الكبير	historical objects أشياء تاريخية	treasure کنز
space مساحة/فراغ/فضاء	design (ed) يصمم	welcome (d) يرحب بـ
منافسة/ مسابقة	entrance مدخل	statue تعثال
city centre وسط المدينة	مجموعة collection	valuable قيم/ذو قيمة
protect (ed)	car park موقف السيارات	مشمس sunny
century (قرن (۱۰۰ عام	عمود column	سotorbike دراجة نارية
square metre متر مربع	دity مدينة	hieroglyphics اللغة الهيروغليفية





Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives	er + than + er + than + er + than - The Nile river is longer than the Amazon.	the + الصفة القصيرة + est - Ali is the tallest boy in our class
Long adjectives	more/less + الصفة الطويلة + than - The lion is more dangerous than the dog.	the most/the least + الصفة الطويلة - This is the least <u>popular</u> book in the library.



السؤال عن القياسات

- 1. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
- * It is 220 kilometres long.

2. How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?

- * It is 1,642 metres deep.
- 3. How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia? * It's 601 metres high.
- 4. How old is the Luxor Temple?

* It's just under 3,500 years old.

السؤال والإجابة لعمل مقارنات

- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?
- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.

السؤال عن الرأى

- What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge?
- I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.

Test 2

Marwa

Marwa

at school.

Based on Unit 8

The second second second	get south at the contract to buy	
1 Listen a	and choose the correct answer	from a, b, c or d: (نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
1. When o	lid the Grand Egyptian Museum	open?
a) In 20	17.	b) In 2018.
c) In 20	19.	d) In 2016.
2. How fai	is it from the pyramids at Giza?	
a) 20 km	n.	b) 12 km.
c) 2 km.	TOTAL LINE TO A SECTION AND A	d) 22 km.
3. Which is	nearer to the city centre, the Gran	nd Egyptian Museum or the old museum?
a) The G	Grand Egyptian Museum.	b) The old museum.
c) None	of them.	d) Both of them.
4. Which o	one has more space?	State on the case of the con-
a) The G	Grand Egyptian Museum.	b) The old museum.
c) None	of them.	d) Both of them.
	te the following dialogue:	
Tassneem	Did you hear about our schoo	I's plan to stop using mobiles at school?
Marwa	: Yes, I (1)	The second of th
Tassneem	: What do you think about it?	
Marwa	: Well, I (2)	that's right.
Tassneem	: Why do you think so?	
Marwa	: Mobiles cause so much troub	le in the class.
Tassneem	: I (3)	
Marwa	: Sure. I think they cause seriou	s diseases.

Tassneem: I'm not (4).....about that.

: In my (5)....., we shouldn't use mobiles



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. About twenty million people live there. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend nice time. There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have delicious meals and different dishes. It is always visited by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city.

A) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
1. What's the capita	al of Egypt?		
2. Where can touris	sts have a look on	the city of Cairo?	
3. Why do you thin	k Cairo is a crowd	led city?	
B) Choose the correc	t answer from a,	b, c or d:	
4. " Delicious " mear	າs		
a) bad	b) nasty	c) tasty	d) dusty
5. About	million peopl	e live in Cairo.	
a) twenty	b) thirty	c) forty	d) sixty
6. The underlined p	ronoun " <u>They</u> " re	fers to	
a) Egyptians	b) places	c) tourists	d) meals
Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
1. How	is the Qasr al-N	il Bridge?	
a) long	b) many	c) tall	d) often
2com	ne from different	countries to enjoy visiting	historical places.
a) Tourists	b) Pyramids	c) Tours	d) Partners
3. Cairo's streets are	always	March & School and	
a) far	b) empty	c) busy	d) tall
4. Mona's school is	Ho	wever, she goes on foot.	
a) near	b) far	c) old	d) high
5. We should look	our h	istorical places.	Ale eumid
a) out	b) at	c) after	d) like

The amazing world around us

6. How	is the car park? It's t	wo metres under the	ground. SB
a) deep	b) long	c) old	d) wide
7. l wi	th your opinion. I have	e another one.	
a) accept	b) agree	c) disagree	d) think
8. February is	month of the	year.	
a) shortest	b) short	c) most short	d) the shortest
9. A: What's	river in the wor	rld? B: The Nile.	
a) the longest	b) the longer	c) longest	d) longer
10. Which is	, Egypt or Germa	any?	
a) hot	b) hottest	c) hotter	d) hotter than
Read and correc	t the underlined wor	ds:	
1. The Great Pyram	id is short than the Ca	iro Tower.	()
2. The weather this	summer is even bad t	than last summer.	()
3. Football is popul	ar than basketball.		()
4. The Tahya Masr I	Bridge is about 67 met	res <u>old</u> .	()
6) Write a paragra	ph of EIGHTY (80) wo	ords on:	
. 10	"Al Azha	ar park"	
		fa	





Vocabulary

Key Vocabular	,	المفردات الرئيسيا	
adventure	مغامرة	article	مقال
activities	أنشطة	10 EV	918 v 10 = 30
	Sports	الرياضات	
Water spo	ریاضات مائیة orts	Mountain sport	رياضات الجبال \$
diving	الغطس/الغوص	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	trekking	الارتحال/التجوال
sailing	الإبحار	mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات في الجبل
kayaking	التجديف	zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل

Additional Voca	bulary		بفردات الإضافية	الم	
Mount Catherine	جبل كاترين	scary	مُخيف	try (y) (ied)	يجرب
the future	المستقبل	Sinai	سيناء	no way	مستحيل
Dahab	مدينة دهب	fun	مرح/ممتع	THE WEST OF STREET	land.

Language Expressions	d	التعبيرات اللغويا	
look ▶ + adj.	يبدو	There's so much to do.	هنالك الكثير لفعله.
play ▶ a game	يلعب لعبة	10. 220 was 2 g - 20 - 2	

Prepositions	Services .	حروف الجر	- 915	Mq L
in the afternoon	بعد الظهيرة	would like to + inf.		يود أن
plans for	خطط لـ	in the morning	ANTE I	فىالصباح



Conjugations of Irregula	ظمة r Verbs	عريف الافعال غير المنت Past participle
Present	Past simple	Past participie
find يجد	found	found
يقول say	said	said

Language Notes

go + (V + ing)

تُستخدم، (go) مع الألعاب الرياضية التي تنتهي بـ (ing).

trekking

diving

kayaking

zip lining

go

windsurfing

mountain biking

sailing

rock climbing

- Hany went diving last year.
- Hassan went windsurfing with his family.

ويمكن استخدام (try) أيضاً

- Imad would like to try zip lining.
- I'm not going to try windsurfing.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. We're not going to kayaking.
 - a) play

b) do

c) go

d) make

- 2. Is she going to rock climbing?
 - a) have

- b) make
- c) play
- d) try



How to write about your future plans كيفية الكتابة عن خططك المستقبلية

- We should all plan for our future.
- I planned for (اليوم / الفترة)
- It will be a busy (اليوم / الفترة) with a lot of things to do.
- I'm going to (المكان الذي ستذهب إليه)
- I'm going to (الأفعال التي ستقوم بها)
- I hope it will be a good trip.

Writing tips

You should leave a space before starting the first sentence.

- يجب أن تترك مسافة قبل كتابة أول جملة.

Example

My plan for tomorrow

We should all plan for our future. This is my plan for tomorrow. Tomorrow will be a busy day with lots of things to do. Firstly, I'm going to get up at six as usual. Then, I'm going to have my breakfast before I go to school. I'm going to meet my friends before lessons start. I usually go home at one o'clock. When I get home, my father is going to take us to Sinai. I'm going to go diving there. My sister would like to try kayaking. My brother is going to go rock climbing. I hope it will be a wonderful trip.

low, your turn:		حان دورك الآن:
	"Your plan for the weekend"	



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of adventure sports do you like?

1. Listen to Hassan and Imad. Which of the quiz activities do they talk about?

SB page 23

Imad : What are you looking at, Hassan?

Hassan: Hi Imad. It's an article(1) about

adventure(2) sports in Egypt.

Imad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving⁽³⁾

in the Red Sea. It was amazing!

Hassan: I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing(4), too.

Imad : What about rock climbing(5)?

Hassan: I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous, but I like trekking⁽⁶⁾ in the

mountains.

!mad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.

Hassan: Are you going to try mountain biking⁽⁷⁾, Imad?

Imad : No, I'm not going to do anything scary. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan: I think you're right. Zip lining⁽⁸⁾ looks scary, too.

Imad : I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan: Really? No way!

Post-listening question:

- What does Imad think about zip lining?



- مغامرة (2)
- الغوص (3)
- ركوب الأمواج (4)
- تسلق الصخور (5)
- الترحال/التجوال (6)
- كوب الدراجات في الجبال (7)
- الانزلاق بالحبل (8)











Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question: - What is Reem going to do?

3. Read the email and answer the question.

SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. 🏸 🙂 There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking(1) in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing(2). It's too scary(3)!



Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing(4) in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! 😂 We're not going to go kayaking(5). There is no time! 🙁

Love, Reem





الارتحال/التجوال (1)

تسلق الصخور (2)

ركوب الأمواج (4)

التجديف (5)

مخيف (3)



Post-reading question: - Is Reem going to go kayaking? Why?

Listening

Pre-listening question: - Is Mustafa going to go rock climbing?

4. Listen to Mustafa and Hazem playing a game. Which bags do they choose?

SB page 23

Mustafa: I'm going to go to the mountains. Hazem: OK. Are you going to go trekking?

Mustafa: No, I'm not.

Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing?

Mustafa: Yes, I am!

Hazem: Your bag is ... D.

Mustafa: That's right.

Hazem: My turn. I'm going to the beach. Mustafa: Are you going to go kayaking?

Hazem: No, I'm not.

Mustafa: Are you going to go diving?

: Yes, I am. Hazem

Mustafa: Your bag is ... B.













Post-listening question: - What do you think you will need when you go kayaking?



Vocabulary Exercises

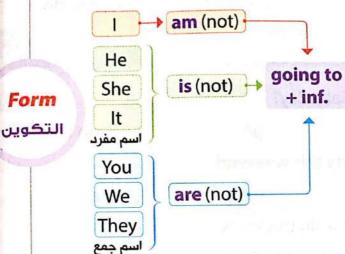
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	In 175 a school L
1. Imad div	ving last year.		SB
a) had	b) played	c) did	d) went
2. We can't go	today because t	there is no wind!	WB
a) diving	b) windsurfing	c) trekking	d) biking
3. I love going	to go down rive	ers. It's usually ve	ry quiet! WB
a) kayaking	b) trekking	c) biking	d) lining
4. We sometimes go	for two days or	more, usually ac	ross the desert. WB
a) diving	b) windsurfing	c) trekking	d) kayaking
5. You should	a sport to be fit.		
a) go	b) try	c) take	d) make
6. My father is the pers	son who plans	our future	
a) at	b) to	c) in	d) for
7. My mother thinks	is very da	ngerous.	
a) football	b) rock climbing	c) chess	d) tennis
8. My sister didn't say a	word when she cam	ne from school. Sh	nevery sad.
a) took	b) looked	c) enjoyed	d) talked
9. If you don't have a g	ood bike, you can't	go	
			d) mountain biking
10. Rock climbing and to	rekking are	sports.	
a) water	b) sea	c) air	d) mountain
11. The sport of zip linin	g looks	e de la composition della comp	An American Co.
a) scared	b) scary	c) afraid	d) frightened
2 is an exc	iting experience w	hen something	unusual or dangerous
happens.		in the second	
a) Adventure	b)Tent	c)Trip	d) Guide

Language

"going to" for future plans

• We use "going to" when we already know our plans for the future.

نستخدم (going to + inf.) عندما نعرف بالفعل خططنا للمستقبل.



I am going to **visit** Sinai. I am not going to **do** anything scary.

My dad is going to **climb** a mountain. My dad isn't going to **go** diving.

We are going to **try** rock climbing. We aren't going to **go** kayaking.

1. Yes/No questions:



A: Are your brothers going to try diving?

B: Yes, they are. / **B:** No, they aren't.

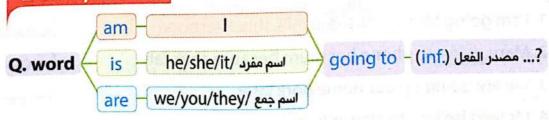
A: Is your father going to take you to the stadium?

B: Yes, he, is. / **B:** No, he isn't.

2. Wh-questions:

Juestion

السؤال



- What are you going to **do** tomorrow afternoon? I'm going to **watch** a football match on TV.



Language Exercises

Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	, c or d:	an effect
1going	to travel home by bus	after school?	WB
a) You are	b) Are you	c) Do you	d) You do
2. What are you go	ing to tomor	row?	WB
a) wearing	b) worn	c) wore	d) wear
3. What are you	do next Saturd	ay?	WB
a) going to	b) going	c) go	d) go to
4. We goi	ng to have a party this	s weekend.	
a) do	b) will	c) have	d) are
5. You aren't going	your cousin	this week.	
a) to visit	b) visit	c) visiting	d) visited
6 going	to open a new shop h	ere?	
a) He is	b) He isn't	c) He is not	d) Is he
7. Are you going to	Spanish be	fore your holiday?	
a) learn	b) learning	c) learned	d) learns
8. Where are you	to go for lunc	h?	
a) are going to	b) are going	c) going	d) going to
9. We hav	e a holiday this year. V	Ve don't have enough	money for it.
a) are going	b) aren't going	c) are going to	d) aren't going to
Read and corre	ct the underlined wo	ords:	
1. I am going to bo	ought some milk this a	fternoon.	()
2. Mary going to p	hone her mum becaus	se she's late.	()
3. We are going do	our homework later.		()
4. Mr Said isn't go t	o stay at home tomor	row.	(
5. A: What are you	r plans for tomorrow	/?	
B: Well, I <u>will</u> clir	mb that mountain ov	er there.	()



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية			*
tent	خيمة	equipment	معدات	skill	مهارة
guide	مرشد	nearly	تقريبًا	Bedouin	بدوی/بدویة
date	تاريخ (اليوم)	journey	رحلة	argument	جدال
mountain o	limbing تسلق الجبال	important	هام/مهم	negotiate (d)	يتفاوض

Additional V	ocabulary	Ď	بفردات الإضافي	الم	(gunta)
travel (led)	يسافر	webpage	صفحة على الإنترنت	finish (ed)	ينهى/ينتهي
camel	جمل	carry (ied)	يحمل	plan	خطة
arrive (d)	يصل	carefully	بحرص	each other	بعضهم البعض
L. January	Places			الأماكن	rave virus
Ras Shetan	رأس شيطان	Ein Kidd	واحة عين كيد	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Serabit el Kha	dem سرابيط الخادم	St Catherine	سانت كاترين	ates south pak	

Lang	uage	Expressions	التعبيرات اللغوية	
have	>	a guide	AND SALES OF THE PARTY OF THE SALES OF THE S	يحصل على مرشد
take	>	43 days	a no avet man	يستغرق ٤٣ يومًا
find	>	the way	of medatur leathaire is to be a wid o	يجد الطريق
go	•	sailing down the	e Nile	يذهب للإبحار في النيل



Prepositions		حروف الجر	
through mountains	عبر/ خلال الجبال	go trekking across	يترحل عبر
stay with	يبقى/ يقيم مع	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
need to + inf.	يحتاج أن	on the third of March	في الثالث من مارس
from to	من إلى	try to + inf.	يحاول أن

تصریف الأفعال غیر المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs					
	Present	Past simple	Past participle		
sleep	ينام	slept	slept		
find	* sıstləşən əşi	found	found		
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left		
win	يفوز/يكسب	won	won		

Language Notes

arrive in + ...

يصل إلى + (مكان كبير) (دولة / مدينة)

يصل إلى (مكان محدد داخل المدينة) (مطار/ مكتب/ بيت/ متحف/ مدرسة)

- My father arrived in London last week.
- He is going to arrive at the airport tomorrow.

It's + adj. + to + inf.

إنه من

It is important to do your homework.

Ordinal numbers

الأعداد الترتيبية

 We add a (th) to the end of a cardinal number to make it an ordinal number except for the spelling exceptions below:

عند تحويل رقم عادى لعدد ترتيبي يتم عادة إضافة (th) في نهاية الرقم فيما عدا بعض الأرقام بسبب نهاياتها:

1 st	first	11th eleventh	21st twenty-first
2 nd	second	12th twelfth	22 nd twenty-second
3 rd	third	13th thirteenth	23 rd twenty-third
4 th	fourth	14th fourteenth	24th twenty-fourth
5 th	fifth	15 th fifteenth	25th twenty-fifth
6 th	sixth	16 th sixteenth	26th twenty-sixth
7 th	seventh	17 th seventeenth	27th twenty-seventh
8 th	eighth	28th twenty-eighth	
9 th	eighth 18 th eighteenth ninth 19 th nineteenth		29th twenty-ninth
	tenth	20th twentieth	30 th thirtieth
-	of Ordinal Numbers	استخدام الأعداد الترتيبية:	31st thirty-first
	s: Her brithday is on t		40 th fortieth
Cent	uries: We're in the 21	st century. القرون	41st forty-first
Sequ		m came second (2 nd) in the in league.	50 th fiftieth
Floor	rs of a building: My o	office is on the tenth (10 th) r. ملوابق المبانى	51st fifty-first

لاحظ كتابة وقراءة التاريخ:

We write:	We say:	We write:	We say:	
1st March	the first of March	3 rd March	the third of March	
2 nd March	the second of March	30 th March	the thirtieth of March	

- My uncle is going to arrive on the tenth of April (10th April).
- On the third of March, Ahmed's going to leave Ras Shetan.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. My uncle arrivedhis office late.
 - a) at

- b) in
- c) to

d) for

- 2. Monday isday of the week.
 - a) the three
- b) the third
- c) three
- d) third

Write it right

How to write about an adventure sport. کیفیة الکتابة عن ریاضة مفامرات

- I like adventure sports.
- There are lots of adventure sports like (اسم الرياضات)
- My favourite adventure sport is (اسم الرياضة)
- In this sport, ا (ما تقوم به)
- I practise it in (المكان)
- I usually practise it with (الشخص)
- It makes me feel happy.

Writing tips

You can use these linking words: then, now, but, although.

- يمكنك استخدام الروابط التالية: then, now, but, although

Example

My adventure sport

I like adventure sports. There are lots of adventure sports like rock climbing, windsurfing and zip lining. I like mountain biking. I liked it many years ago when my father bought me my first bike. Today, I am going to go mountain biking with my friend. So, I get dressed and phone my best friend. He is the person who I go mountain biking with. We go to a place that is a forest with mountains. After my friend arrives at my house we make sure that all of the equipment is safe on the bike. With water bottles filled and bikes ready to go, we are off. It makes us feel happy.

Now, your turn:	ورك الأن: من المصرف المستولة المستولة الأن:
	"Your favourite sport"
TO THE PROPERTY OF STREET	

Reading ____

Pre-reading question: - Do you know any places in Ras Shetan?

1. Read Ahmed's plans. When is he going to climb Mount Catherine and what do you think a tent is?

SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure(1)

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan⁽²⁾ to Serabit el Khadem⁽³⁾. I'm going to sleep in a tent⁽⁴⁾ and stay with Bedouin⁽⁵⁾ families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey⁽⁶⁾ is going to take me 43 days.

- مغامرة (1)
- رأس شيطان (2)
- سرابيط الخادم (3)
- خيمة (4)
- بدوية (5)
- رحلة (6)
- واحة عين كيد (7)
- جبل سانت كاترين (8)

Here's my plan:

3rd March leave Ras Shetan

14th March arrive at Ein Kidd(7)

30th March arrive at St Catherine

1st April climb Mount Catherine(8)

15th April arrive at Serabit El Khadem





Post-reading question: - What is Ahmed going to do on 30th March?

Listening

5. Listen to Mariam talking about her plan. Complete her notes.

SB page 25

Mariam: Next year, I'm going to go sailing⁽¹⁾ down the Nile with my family. We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December, we're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



الإيجار (1)



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1. A is a pers	on who shows a plac	e to tourists.	WB
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) nurse	d) guide
2. A is somet	hing you sleep in wh	en you go camping.	WB
a) camel	b) guide	c) tent	d) journey
3. They took four days to	o cross the desert. It v	vas a difficult	WB
a) visit	b) journey	c) tent	d) guide
4. We went to Sinai and	stayed with	families where the	y live.
a) Bedouin	b) French	c) English	d) Chinese
5. When you go mounta	ain climbing, you sho	uld check your	
a) information	b) machines	c) equipment	d) argument
6. The journey is going	to 43 day	s.	SB
a) try	b) talk	c) take	d) go
7. I'm going to go trekk	ing Sinai.	that stopped the district	
a) course	b) cross	c) a cross	d) across
8. A camel is going to	food and v	vater.	SB
a) ride	b) carry	c) drive	d) try
9. The journey is going			SB
a) take			d) carry
10. Good students listen	to their to	eachers.	
a) carefully	b) quickly	c) badly	d) carelessly
11. He is going to travel			
51	h) in	c) at	d) with

Tip

It is important to negotiate when you need to decide something important with other people. Remember, negotiation is not about winning an argument. Listen carefully to what other people say. You should try to get the best ideas from and for each other.

من المهم أن تتناقش عندما تقرر شيئًا مهمًا مع أشخاص آخرين. تذكر أن التفاوض لا يعنى الفوز في المناقشة. استمع جيدًا إلى ما يقوله الآخرون. حاول الحصول على أفضل الأفكار سواء من خلالك أو من خلال آخرين.

Life Skills

 You are going to go mountain climbing. Choose three things you should take with you.

ستقوم بتسلق جبل. اختر ثلاثة أشياء يجب أن تأخذها معك.

Compare answers with a partner. Negotiate the three most important things to take.



قارن اجاباتك مع شريك. ناقش معه أهم ثلاثة اشياء لأخذها.

Project

Plan your own adventure.

- 1. Work in pairs. Choose an adventure sport from the lesson, or your own ideas.
- 2. Research information about this sport. Where can you do it? What equipment or skills do you need to do it? How long will you need?
- 3. Tell other students about your plan.

Lessons 1 & 2

General Exercises

Complete the follow	ving dialogue:		
Tom • I'm so hanny it	's Friday. Are you d	oing to do anything th	is weekend? urfing with Nabil.
Tom : Didn't you go r	nountain climbing	last weekend?	
Rvan: Yes, and we pla	n to (2)	div	ing in two weeks
Tom : I didn't know y	ou like (3)		sports so much
I guess it's dan	gerous.		
Ryan: But for me, it's			
Tom : Aren't you afra			
			that makes it safe
Tom : Have fun this v			
		very much.	
2 Choose the correct			
1is a kind o	of water sports.		
		c) Zip lining	
2. I'm going to travel n	early 500 kilometr	es mountair	is.
a) through	b) thorough	c) throw	d) cross
3is a mour	tain sport.		
a) Kayaking	b) Diving	c) Rock climbing	d) Windsurfing
4. I diving la	st weekend. It was	s wonderful.	
a) went	b) played	c) did	d) had
5. When you go trekkir	ng across the dese	rt, you need to	a guide.
a) make	b) go	c) have	d) do
6. I can't this	box. It's very hear	vy. Will alled a molfar so	And the conflict
a) try	b) carry	c) cry	d) curry
7. I usually go	down the Nile.		A REGULAÇ M
a) mountain biking		c) trekking	d) sailing

Adventure!	

	8. Next summer, I	travel to Engl	and.	
	a) going to	b) am going to	c) am going	d) going
	9. Theyg	going to play tennis this	s afternoon.	
	a) am	b) is	c) are	d) do
	10. Is Tony going to	this book?		
	a) read	b) reading	c) reads	d) to read
(3 Read and correct	t the underlined word	ls:	
	1. I are not going to	try windsurfing. I can't	swim.	()
	2. The journey goin	g to start in April.		()
	3. What is she going	to tried tomorrow after	ernoon?	()
	4. You are going to	try rock climbing?		()
	Write a paragrap	h of EIGHTY (80) word	ds on:	
		"A sport you		
	·····			
				1962-201
			3 1000	
	75/20	. 프로프 (B. C.)	and a william	
		•••••		



Vocabulary

Key Voc	abulary				الرئيسية	فردات	مال
postcard	.ية	بطاقة بريد	a bit قليلا		protect (ed) يحمى		
towel فوطة		pre	esentatio	on	عرض	railway line خط سكة حديد	
a newspaper جريدة		cha	allenge	LYSNIOS	تحدى	transport مواصلات	
British	*	بريطاني	coı	mplete	(d)	يكمل	مرآة mirror
return (ed) يعود/يرجع			dry	/ /// (iec	نفف (ا	يجف/يج	get dressed پرتدی ملابسه
		Weath	er wo	ords	بالطقس	خاصة	کلمات
Noun	الاسم	Adject	ive	الصفة	Noun	Lorm	الصفة Adjective الا
rain	مطر	rainy		مطير	sun	ىس	مشمس sunny شه
cloud	سحابة	cloudy	wolf])	غائم	wind	5	کثیر الریاح windy ریا
storm	عاصفة	stormy		عاصف	snow		ثلجی snowy ثلج
fog	ضباب	foggy		ضبابی			1 12 2 12 14 14 2 40
	- 11=	Places		THE REAL PROPERTY.			الأماكر
India		الهند	Lo	ndon		لندن	the USA الأمريكية
Hong Kor	ig a	هونج كونج	Japan اليابان		اليابان	Oman عمان	
South Afri	ica لين	جنوب إفرين	Su	ez	U	السويس	

Additional Vo	cabulary				
trek (ked)	يترحل	rocks	صخور	dark	داكن/مظلم
the weather	الطقس	excited	منفعل/فرح/متشوق	frightened	خائف
French	اللغة الفرنسية	terrible	فظيع/رهيب	check (ed)	يفحص/يراجع

Langua	ge Expressions	Ċ	برات اللغوين	= = 500	
do an activity		يؤدى نشاطًا	keep >	warm	يبقى دافئًا
		fast يُعد سلطة/شاي/الإ	take >	a photo	يلتقط صورة
make >	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	take	a challenge	يأخذ تحديًا

Prepositions	وف الجر	عرا
on the way down فى الطريق لأسفل	at the start of في بداية	قمة the top of
یاتی/یخرج من come out of	dry with يجفف بـ	على الغداء for lunch
a cup oftea هنجان شای	sit by the fire يجلس بجانب النار	at sea في البحر
around the World حول العالم	in 80 days في ۸۰ يومًا	put on sunglasses یرتدی نظارة شمس
get to	فى الوقت المحدد on time	on a fire على النار

Words and Opposites				الكلمات وعكسها			
north	شمال	south	جنوب	east	شرق	west	غرب

Conjugations of	Irregular \	rerus	صريف الأفعال غير المنت Past participle
Present	$\overline{}$	Past simple	
fall over	يقع	fell over	fallen over
م/یؤذی nurt	يصيب/يجر	hurt	hurt
each o	يُعلم/يُدر	taught	taught
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
ظد keep	يبقى/يحتف	kept	kept
put on	یرتدی	put on	put on

Language Notes

too

أيضًا (في نهاية الجملة المثبتة)

I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited, too.

sound + adj.

The maths homework sounds easy today.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. It sounds to go camping in the desert.
 - b) interested a) interesting
- c) interest
- d) interests

- 2. My sister likes chess and I like it,
 - a) to
- b) so

- c) enough
- d) too

6

Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question: - What did they do yesterday?

1. Read the postcard.(1) Which activity are they going to do tomorrow? SB page 26

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa⁽²⁾! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.



بطاقة بريدية (1)

جنوب إفريقيا (2)

الترحال (3)

سحب (4)

عاصفة (5)

صخور (6)

الانزلاق بالحبل (7)

Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking(3) in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark clouds(4). On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm(5). The rocks(6) were wet and Tamer fell over and hurt himself. But it's OK — his leg is better today.

Tomorrow, the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! [7] I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited, too.

See you soon, Dalia

Post-reading question: - What happened to Tamer?

Listening



Pre-listening question: - What's the weather like today?

4. Listen to the descriptions a-d. Which describes the photo in Exercise 1? SB page 26

It's very sunny(1) and there aren't any clouds in the sky. I think A it's a very hot day.

There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that b there's going to be a storm.

It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot(2).

It's very $foggy^{(3)}$. I think it's raining. It looks $cold^{(4)}$ and $wet^{(5)}$.

مشمس (1)

(2) حار

ضبابی (3)

بارد (4)

مبلل (5)

Post-listening question: - How's the weather in winter?



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What activities can you do at the desert?

7. Put these pictures in the correct order to tell a story. Then listen to Nader's presentation and check your answers.

SB page 27

- يرتدى ملابسه (1)
- مرآة (2)
- يحمى (3)
- مرشد (4)

early and made myself breakfast. Then I got dressed⁽¹⁾. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror⁽²⁾. I put on a hat and sunglasses to protect⁽³⁾ myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide⁽⁴⁾ and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold, we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm.









Post-listening question:

- Where did Nader go last weekend?

Reading ____

Pre-reading question: - When did Phileas Fogg arrive in London?

1. Look at the picture and read the introduction to Around the World in 80 Days. Which types of transport(1) did people use in 1872? SB page 28

Around the World in 80 Days

by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article⁽²⁾ about a new railway line⁽³⁾ across India. It gave him a great idea for a book. He wrote a story about a British man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge⁽⁴⁾ to travel around⁽⁵⁾ the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

- المواصلات (1)
- مقال في جريدة (2)
- خط سكة حديد (3)
- تحدی (4)
- يتجول (5)

2. Look at Phileas Fogg's plan and answer the questions.

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days
Leave on 2 nd October	Returen on 21st December	





3. Read the end of the story and circle the correct words.

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm at sea and he arrives on London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake: because he travelled east around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes his challenge on time!

Post-reading question: - Do you think travelling around the world in just 80 days is easy nowadays? Why?



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c or d:		
1. Phileas Fogg completed	d hison time.	tings by acological time for	SB
a) challenge		c) guide	d) line
2. Phileas Fogg went			SB
a) around	b) a round	c) round	d) a circle
3. We wear sunglasses to	our eyes from	the sun.	
a) stay	b) protect	c) dry	d) check
4. The USA was the last		sited.	
a) village	b) town	c) city	d) country
5. There is a lot of	in the early morning	. People can't see wel	L.
a) fog	b) wind	c) rain	d) storm
6. Trains travel on	lines.	strai or zer	
	b) telephone	c) airway	d) mail
7. To win this game, don'		s. necetor and tak	
a) make	b) do		d) work
8. I looked at myself in th	e	All principal	
a) ship	b) mirror	c) wall	d) board
9. At the start of the trek,	the weather was		
a) stormy	b) foggy	c) sunny	d) snowy
10. My father always reads	the in the m	orning to know the n	ews.
a) story			
11.1 dressed and			
a) took		c) got	d) went
12. Phileasa cha	llenge to travel around	the world in just 80 o	days. 🌏
a) agrees	b) takes	c) gives	d) talks



Reflexive pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

• We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object of a sentence are the same.

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Examples
lights became a six	myself	I usually go to school by myself.
You (singular)	• yourself	You should do your homework by yourself.
You (plural)	• yourselves	Did you clean the house by yourselves?
He	himself	He hurt himself with the knife.
She	• herself	She looked at <i>herself</i> in a mirror.
It	• itself	The cat threw the ball itself.
We	ourselves	We will clean the room ourselves.
They	themselves	They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves

myself

تعبر عن المتكلم المفرد أي "بنفسي/نفسي". وتأتي مع الضمير ([)

-I did my homework (by) myself.

(بنفسی)

-I hurt myself with a knife.

(نفسی)

himself

تعبر عن الغائب المفرد المذكر أي "نفسه/بنفسه". وتأتى مع الضمير (he).

- He did his homework (by) himself.

(بنفسه)

- Ali hurt himself with a knife.

(نفسه)

herself

تعبر عن الغائب المفرد المؤنث أي "بنفسها/نفسها". وتأتى مع الضمير (she).

-She did her homework (by) herself.

(بنفسما)

-Mona hurt herself with a knife.

(نفسما)



itself	ث) أي "بنفسه/نفسه - بنفسها/نفسها". وتأتى مع الضمير (it).	لعاقل (مذكر أو مؤند	تعبر عن المفرد غير ا				
- The dog	- The dog carried the bag (by) itself. (بنفسه)						
- The bird	hurt itself.	(نفسه)	Har previous				
yourself	سك". تأتى مع الضمير (you).	مفرد أى "بنفسك/نف	تعبر عن المخاطب ال				
- You shou	uld do your homework (by) yourself.	(بنفسك)	Subject				
- You hurt	yourself with a knife, Ali.	(نفسك)					
yourselve	فسكم". و تأتى مع الضمير (you).	جمع أى "بأنفسكم/أن	تعبر عن المخاطب ال				
- You all sh	nould do your homework (by) yourselves.	(بأنفسكم)	leneded as 'r'				
- You hurt	yourselves with a knife, children.	(أنفسكم)	ubt				
ourselves	ىنا". وتأتى مع الضمير (we).	مع أى "بانفسنا/انفس	تعبر عن المتكلم الج				
- We did m	ny homework (by) ourselves.	(بأنفسنا)					
- Ali and Il	hurt ourselves with a knife.	(أنفسنا)	.435				
themselves	ل وغير العاقل) أي "بأنفسهم/أنفسهم". وتأتى مع الضمير (they).	(المذكر والمؤنث العاقا	تعبر عن الغائب الجمع				
- The boys	did their homework (by) themselves.	(بانفسمم)	To the second				
- Mona an	d Sama hurt themselves with a knife.	(أنفسهم)	de-yet.				
- The birds	s hurt themselves.	(أنفسهم)	oorxe adu :- he, actual t				
-Che	eck Point						
Read	and correct the underlined words:		Malabba s				
	joyed themselves when we went sailing.		()				
2. Sami o	came out of the sea and dried herself with a	towel.	()				
3. I made	meself some salad for lunch.		()				
4. Maya	taught itself to speak French.		()				

Language Exercises

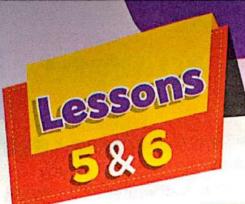
Choose the co	orrect answer from a, b, c	or d:	unda tente merri Lan
1. I didn't buy this	s cake. I made it		WB
a) myself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
	in caves to protect	from eagles.	WB
a) itself	b) yourselves	c) ourselves	d) themselves
3. Sara has a jack	et to keep warm.		WB
a) myself	b) herself	c) himself	d) yourself
4. Emma, did you	take the photo by	weather like at 1.	
a) itself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
5. My old mobile	often turns off. It	needs a new batte	ery.
a) yourself	b) themselves	c) itself	d) himself
6. Don't worry! H	e can do it by		
a) myself	b) herself	c) himself	d) yourself
7. I told him abou	ut the sad news		
a) myself	b) himself	c) itself	d) herself
8. Good news! Th	e horses came back home	by	
a) itself	b) themselves	c) yourself	d) yourselves
9. Mona and Aly	, I am not going to do the	homework for yo	ou. You have to do
it		Towis slaw red inv	edition en distribe
a) myself	b) ourselves	c) yourselves	d) yourself
Read and cor	rect the underlined words	Single property and	
1. Did both of yo	u do this job by yourself?	Section of forces is	() r _ j.
2. The children ca	an't look after <u>himself</u> .	m, ugly	()
3. Leila, please, h	elp herself to the cakes!	:	(
4. I enjoyed your	self at the party.	blo3 (o,	()
5. Please, John, n	nake <u>herself</u> feel at home.	adi ni nui union ignom (d	(

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose	e the correct answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
1 When did they a	o trekking in the mount	ains?	
a) Last week.	b) Last month.	c) Yesterday.	d) Tomorrow.
2. Who fell and hur			
a) Tamer.	b) Nagi.	c) Samy.	d) Said.
The state of the s	ather on the way down	?	
a) Stormy.	b) Sunny.	c) Foggy.	d) Snowy.
State Control of the	eather like at the start?		
a) Stormy.	b) Sunny.	c) Foggy.	d) Snowy.
	ing, then answer the q	uestions:	
Last Monday, I w	vent to Siwa. It was the t	rip of my life and	I enjoyed it. Siwa is an
awesome place to	go for a nice trip. I starte	d the journey to S	Siwa on a planned date
by car. It was a sunr	ny day. I was very excited	l about the Siwa t	rip. I saw a wonderland
when I arrived in S	iwa. It was such a wond	lerful view. One t	hing that I was excited
about was the road	d which was full of gree	n trees. The road	was not noisy at all. As
the day ended, peo	pple came out and starte	d having fun. The	re were many fantastic
	yed the Siwa trip very		
	oliday, I'm going to visit		
	ing questions:		
	riter visit Siwa?		
	here?		
	ter excited about the ro		
1.5	t answer from a, b, c o		
	word "awesome" means		
a) boring	b) ugly		d) frightened
5. The weather was	S		that along a short if
a) hot	b) cold	c) sunny	d) rainy
Control Control Control	ing fun in the		
a) evening	b) morning	c) afternoon	d) dawn
	15. W. 255		ETTATURAL.

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The roads are dange	rous when it is	because you can't	see very well. WB
	b) foggy	c) sunny	d) cloudy
2. There isa	t the top of that mou		
a) wind		c) snow	d) storm
3. He on h	is hat and went out.		
a) wore	b) dressed	c) put	d) took
4. They sit by the fire	to warm.		
a) give	b) do	c) go	d) keep
5. Tourists like	photos by the Py	ramids.	
a) drying	b) speaking	c) taking	d) talking
6. We can't sail becau	use there is no		WB
a) fog	b) snow	c) rain	d) wind
7. Dalia is	holiday in South Afric	ca.	
a) in	b) at	c) for	d) on
8. She didn't tell him	. I told him	•	
a) herself	b) myself	c) himself	d) yourself
9. The children enjoy	yedat the b	oeach.	inersing
a) himself	b) ourselves	c) yourselves	d) themselves
1000	in the mirro		
a) by herself	b) by himself	c) at himself	d) at herself
Read and correct	the underlined word	ds:	
1. The dog came ho	me by <u>himself</u> .		()
2. Did Ghada do the	homework by yourse	lf?	()
3. I introduced hims	elf to my new neighbo	our.	()
4. The father decide	ed to repair the car her	self.	()
6 Write a paragrap	h of EIGHTY (80) wor	rds on:	
Sh 1	"A nice t	rip"	
1.75			
	TOWN OWN TREATER.		i i viges



SB pages 29 & 30, WB pages 88 & 89

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
photo album	ألبوم صور	letter	خطاب
online	عبر الإنترنت	magazine	مجل <mark>ة</mark>
email	بريد إلكتروني	- 1020001	Sept 1

المفردات الإضافية Additional Vocabulary			
grandad	الجد	special	خاص/مميز
present	هدية	respect (ed)	يحترم

Language	لغوية Expressions	التغييرات ال
	a present	يعد هدية
make >	a photo album	يعد ألبوم صور عروز على المساد الها المساد
go 🕨	swimming	يذهب للسباحة المراجع ا

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
form of	نوع/شكل من	different to/from	مختلف عن
at the station	في المحطة	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
reply to	یرد علی	advantages of/to	ممیزات لـ

Conjugations of Irregula	ظمة Verbs	تصريف الأفعال غير المنت
Present	Past simple	Past participle
draw يرسم	drew	drawn

Words and Opposites			الكلمات وعكسها	SiO of release to Original	
advantages	مزايا	میوب disadvantages	مختلف different	the same نفس الشئ	
dangerous	خطير	safe آمن	online متصل بالإنترنت	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت	

Language Notes

would ('d) rather + inf.

يفضل أن

• I'd rather eat fruit.

look forward to + (V + ing)

يتطلع إلى

• I'm looking forward to seeing you again.

love (V + ing/N)

حب

- I love being by the sea.
- I love swimming.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I'd rather home now.
 - a) to go
- b) go

- c) going
- d) went

- 2. I look forward toa doctor.
 - a) become
- b) became
- c) becoming
- d) becomes

- 3. Mona loves to music.
 - a) listen
- b) listens
- c) listening
- d) listened





Pre-listening question:

- What kind of water sports do you like doing?

2. Listen to Ola and Lamia. Tick (\checkmark) the activity they decide to do.

SB page 29

- السباحة (1)
- ركوب الأمواج (2)

: I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. Ola I love being by the sea. What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia: Why don't we go swimming(1)?

: I'm not sure. Swimming is fun, but we can Ola do that at home. I'd rather do something more exciting.

Lamia: OK. How about going windsurfing (2)?

: I don't know. I'm not very good at Ola windsurfing ... and it isn't very windy today.

Lamia: OK, not swimming and not windsurfing ... I know! Let's go kayaking (3).

: Good idea! I love kayaking. Ola





Post-listening question:

- Why didn't Ola go windsurfing?

Reading

Pre-reading question: - Who send this email?

2. Read the email. Who is Kareem?

SB page 30

- مسرور (1)
- يتطلع إلى (2)
- ركوب الأمواج (3)
- الغوص (4)
- هدية (5)
- ألبوم صور (6)

From : Maher

To : Karim

Subject: Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited (1) that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to (2) seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing (3) or diving (4)?

On Thursday, Grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present (5). Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album (6).

See you on Saturday!

From

Maher

Post-reading question:

- Where's the new home?



Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- Where is Judy going?

1. Where do these sentences go in Judy's email to Manal?

WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy.

Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria.



They're going to take me to the famous library. I'm very excited about that.

It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons!

I can't play tennis now, but I'm going be very good after the lessons!

Let's do some things together before we go back to school. What about going to the beach?

You always like swimming. Write to me soon so I know your plans!

From

Judy

Post-reading question:

- When is Judy going to go home?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the co	rrect answer from a, b	, c or d:	And the state of t
1. Maher lives	the beach.		SB
a) from	b) with	c) by	d) in
2. Maher asks Kar	im to find photos	themselves and	their other cousins.
			SB
a) at	b) of	c) by	d) near
3. Cars, trains and	ships are of t	transport.	
a) frames	b) farms	c) forms	d) firms
4. You should	other people's o	pinions.	
a) disagree	b) refuse	c) respect	d) dislike
5. My brother's ho	obbies are different	those of mine.	21. 1000
a) in	b) with	c) by	d) to
6. I put all my pho	otos in a photo	TI - Great	
a) book	b) note	c) album	d) guide
7. I like studying .	But the inter	net is quite slow.	
a) offline	b) online	c) outline	d) inline
8. Maher wants to	a special pre	esent for his grandad	SB
a) make	b) do	c) give	d) try
	to seeing you ag	jain.	
a) with	b) for	c) up	d) forward
	meet our uncle	the station.	
a) for	b) with	c) at	d) to
	vays gives me a	present.	
to said and Takin	b) special	c) scary	d) afraid
a) long	93	match another one.	atte. I We'll see ou the
	a reply you.	A Levi	d) for
a) from	b) to	c) by	IV Trivoto



Speaking

Making and responding to suggestions

عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها

Making and responding to eags	هيا بنا
Let's + inf.	
*Let's go diving.	أفضل
I'd rather + inf.	N.L.Year Town
*I'd rather visit the park.	ها،
Shall we + inf?	
*Shall we play tennis?	لم لا
Why don't we + inf?	
*Why don't we go rock climbing?	C to Dies
How about + (v + ing.)?	وماذا عن؟
*How about playing football?	Ank a si

الموافقة		الرفض الملكان	
- Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!	- I'm not sure.- That sounds a bit scary.	أنا غير متأكد.
- Great idea!	فكرة عظيمة!		يبدو هذا مخيف قليلًا.

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem: OK. Let's see that.



شرح كتابة الإيميل

How to write an email:

تعلم كيفية كتابة الإيميل:

١. نكتب اسم / إيميل المرسَل إليه ٢. اسم المرسل ٣. الموضوع.

٤. التحية: اسم المرسل إليه + Hello / Hi / Dear

ه. الجملة الافتتاحية: ?I'm happy to send this email to you. How are you and your family

٣. نكتب عن الموضوع ٧. الجملة الختامية: See you soon / Best wishes / All the best

٨. توقيع المرسل



To : Anas

From: Kady

Subject: An adventure sport

Dear Anas,

How are you? You asked me in your email about places to visit in Egypt. I recommend the Pyramids. The Egyptian Museum is a good place to learn all about the things you'll see at the ancient sites. I also recommend that you go with a guide. The guide can tell you a lot of interesting things about the places you are going to visit. In Luxor, you can visit Luxor and Karnak Temples. In Aswan, you will like the sunny weather and the ancient temples. The best beaches are in Hurghada where you can try windsurfing. You can go snorkelling and scuba diving. You can go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. It's a good place to buy souvenirs.

See you soon,

Kady

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

(1) Complete the	following dialogue:	5 marty	
	red! What shall we do?		River at work
Sister : (1)	IEU: Wilat Silali We do.	play table te	nnis.
		······································	
Brother: No, 11	ate table tennis.	do you hate i	t?
Sister : (2)	Leap't play it vory we	II	ing to Selection
Brother : Becau	se I can't play it very we	we watch TV?	1107 500
Sister : (3)		we watch TV?	t's watch a James
Bond f			
	on't like his films.	watch H	iah School
		watch H	igh school
Musica			
Sister : Yes! I lo	ove music.		
Choose the co	rrect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
		l love them.	
	b) bored	c) excited	d) unhappy
a) sad	b) bored	Cara?	handa garage
2. Can you show	me your photo	, Jaia!	d) guide
	b) note		u) guide
3. We should	a nice present fo	or our mother.	har deliberte
a) draw	b) do	c) make	d) give
4. What	going windsurfing?	a and the second and the	WB
a) out	b) at	c) of	d) about
5 Maher and Kari	m can wind	lsurfing or diving.	SB
a) make	b) play	c) do	d) go
6 Halivas	the beach. He alw	ays goes swimming.	
	b) far	c) in front	d) by
a) next			e Na
7. l mys		c) manda	d) done
a) took	b) gave	c) made	u) done

Adventure!

8. Don't help us, Dad! a) yourselves	b) ourselves	c) himself	d) herself
9. Sandy is a baby, she	b) myself	c) yourself	d) herself
a) himself 10. If you can't do this			r help.
	b) himself	c) yourself	d) itself
a) herself			
Read and correct t	he underlined word	ls:	The man marker in
1. It was a great trip, \	we really enjoyed <u>you</u>	rselves.	()
2. Welcome Ghada, m			()
3. My cat cleans myse			()
4. You can move the			()
	"Water spo	orts	
	The state of the s	السال الأفادة؟ أن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك بن خلال خدمة اسأل الأضواء دخل علم: ww.aladwaa.com	ii a



Videoscript >

SB page 29

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey⁽¹⁾, athletics⁽²⁾, and archery⁽³⁾. But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt? Very old drawings and paintings show people playing a lot of different sports.

This picture in the Temple of Ramses III shows people fencing (4) with sticks(5). In fencing today, two people fight (6) each other with swords(7).

The Ancient Egyptians also liked running⁽⁸⁾. During the time of King Taharka, there was a race⁽⁹⁾ of 100 kilometres. People believe⁽¹⁰⁾ that this was a test so that the king could find his best soldiers⁽¹¹⁾. Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic Race⁽¹²⁾. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara Pyramid⁽¹³⁾ and finishes in Saqqara ⁽¹⁴⁾. Running is very popular today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy.

الهوكي (1)

ألعاب القوى (2)

الرماية (3)

المبارزة (4)

العصا (5)

يتشاجر (6)

السيوف (7)

الجرى (8)

سباق (9)

يعتقد (10)

جنود (11)

السباق الفرعوني (12)

هرم هوارة (13)

سقارة (14)

التنس (15)

مضرب (16)

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis⁽¹⁵⁾, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis ... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket⁽¹⁶⁾ you hit the ball with.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you?

Unit 9 Review

Vocabulary

	and the second second					
Key Vocabulary		· ·	فردات الرئيسية	الم		1 - 2 -
tent	خيمة	nearly	تقريبًا	Bedou	uin	بدوی/بدو
guide	دلیل	journey	رحلة	argun	nent	جدال
	تاريخ (اليو	important	مهم/مهم	negot	riate (d)	يتفاوض
mountain climbing		adventure sp	oort ریاضة مغامرة	negot	iation	التفاوض
newspaper	جريدة	article	مقال	railwa	ید y line	خط سکة حا
British	بريطاني	challenge	تحدى	transp	oort	مواصلات
	يعود/يرجع	magazine	مجلة	online	2	عبر الإنترنت
	ألبوم صور	email	بريد إلكتروني	letter		خطاب
	Sports			الرياضار		
Water spo	ائية rts	ریاضة م	Mounta	in spor	ts الجبال	رياض
diving	I SI	الغطس/الغوص	rock climbin	g)9	تسلق الصذ
windsurfing		ركوب الأمواج	trekking ل/التجوال		الارتحال/التج	
sailing		الإبحار	mountain biking الجبل		ركوب الدراج	
kayaking		التجديف	zip lining		بل	الانزلاق بالد
de Palada	Weath	ner words	خاصة بالطقس	كلمات	i ban pris	
Noun וلاسم	Adje	الصفة ctive	Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة
rain طر	rainy	مطير ا	sun	شمس	sunny	مشمس
دابة cloud	cloud	dy غائم	wind	رياح	windy	كثير الرياح
storm اصفة	storr	alصف ny	snow	ثلج	snowy	ثلجى
بباب fog	ے fogg	ضبابی ۷				





"going to" for future plans

- Iam going to visit my grandfather on Friday.
- My sister is not going to go kayaking.
- A: Are your brothers going to try diving? B: Yes, they are. B: No, they aren't.

R	Reflexive pronouns			الف
177	. Telpotist.	لة ومفعولها متماثلين:	ة عندما يكون فاعل الجم	ستخدم الضمائر المنعكس
الفاعل	milyayalar 20	We	You	You
الضمير المنعكس	myself	ourselves	yourself	yourselves
	بنفسى/نفسى	بأنفسنا/أنفسنا	بنفسك/نفسك	بأنفسكم/أنفسكم
الفاعل	He	She	lt	They
الضمير المنعكس	himself	herself	itself	themselves
PROPERTY IN LABOUR DE	نفسه/بنفسه	بنفسما/نفسما	بنفسه/نفسه	بأنفسهم/أنفسهم

Speaking

طلب الاقتراحات والرد عليها Making and responding to suggestions

- *Let's go diving.
- *I'd rather visit the park.
- *Shall we play tennis?
- *How about playing football?
- * Why don't we go rock climbing?

Great idea!

Good idea!

I'm not sure.

I don't like the sound of that.

That sounds a bit scary.

Test

Based on Unit 9

1 Lister	n and choose th	e correct answer fr		(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتار
1. How	should you liste	n to other people?		
	refully.	b) Carelessly.	c) Badly.	d) Terribly.
2. You s	hould w	ith the others when	you decide somet	hing important.
a) tre		b) play	c) negotiate	d) argue
3. Who	should you get	the best ideas from	?	
				d) Bad people.
		winning an argume		
a) Yes		b) No.	c) Sure.	d) I don't know.
2 Comp	lete the follow	ing dialogue:	nismidom o militario	
Maher	: Hi, Mustafa!	Do you want to go	out after work?	
Mustafa	:Sure, why no	ot? What (1)		we do?
Maher		. What do you have		
Mustafa		2)		movie?
Maher		about that. How ab		
Mustafa		like a (3)		
		nazing dishes.		
Maher		eone told me it can	be hard to get a to	able, so
Marie	(4)		go out early.	
Maretafa				o watch the movie
Maher			v	ve meet in front of
	the restauran			
Mustafa	: Sounds good	. I'll see you then.		3, You at outdinte



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Trekking is an adventure hobby that most children, who love nature, like. It is both a hobby and a sport. Taking up trekking as a hobby is also useful to children. Trekking is quite exciting. Here's some advice when you go trekking. Always go with an elder person. Start exercising at least a few weeks before the trekking trip. Make sure to prepare your food, water and all your equipment before you leave the camp. Carry dry fruits and sweets. Leave your money, passport, travel tickets and other valuables at the camp or at the hotel. Do not make loud noise or throw litter here and there during your trip. Keep the mountains clean and bring back all your waste from the mountains. Take a rest when you feel tired. Always follow your guide and stay close to your group. Many schools organise trekking to develop love for nature among students.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the pass	age about?	3	
	er or a mountain sport		
	k you need dry fruits a		
B) Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
4. You should keep	your valuables at the .	whe	en you go trekking.
a) school	b) camp	c) hotel	d) Both b and c
5. You should stay	close to your	when you go	trekking.
a) group	b) animals	c) plants	d) parents
6. Trekking is	to children.		
a) bad	b) ugly	c) useless	d) useful
4 Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. Which of the foll	owing is a dangerous s	port?	
a) Football.	b) Rock climbing.	c) Chess.	d)Tennis.
2. We're going to g	oin the s	ea.	
a) windsurfing		b) mountain bik	king
c) zip lining		d) rock climbing	i structu
3. You should lister	ı to your	father's advice.	
a) carefully	b) quickly	c) badly	d) carelessly

Adv	_{/en}	tur	e!

4. We're going to l		March	
	uxor on the second.		N. L.
a) on	b) of	c) at	d) by
		this mountain, but I o	
a) challenge	b) change	c) letter	d) message
6. It's a good idea	to go to the beach w	hen the weather is	
a) snowy	b) cold	c) windy	d) sunny
7. A: What's today	's? B: It	's 26 th March, 2020.	
a) history	b) note	c) album	d) date
8. It's so cold. I'll m	ake a ł	not drink.	
a) himself	b) myself	c) herself	d) yourself
9. Can you do this	project by	, boys?	
a) yourself	b) ourselves	c) themselves	d) yourselves
10. In the story <i>Blac</i>	k Beauty, the horse	tells the s	tory.
a) itself	b) yourself	c) herself	d) myself
Read and corre	ect the underlined w	ords:	
1. When are you going go trekking?			(
2. I repaired my bike itself.			(
3. Are the boys went to play football this afternoon?			(
4. Susan and I walked to the shop by themselves.			(
4. Susan and I wal	ked to the shop by the	nemselves.	(
	ked to the shop by the aph of EIGHTY (80)		
	aph of EIGHTY (80)		
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	(
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	(
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	(
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	(
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	
	aph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	

Review



Units 7, 8 & 9





Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

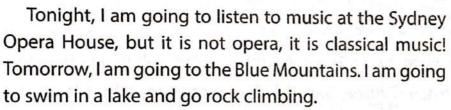
- What did Amy do yesterday?

Read the emails. Did Amy and Dareen both climb Sydney Harbour Bridge?

SB page 32

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday, I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge. It was very high and scary. But the views from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie of ourselves!



Here are some photos!

Love, Amy





Hi Amy,

Your holiday sounds fantastic. My family and I went to Sydney last year, but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing and kayaking. I love water sports!

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Post-reading question:

- What is Amy going to do tomorrow?



esson

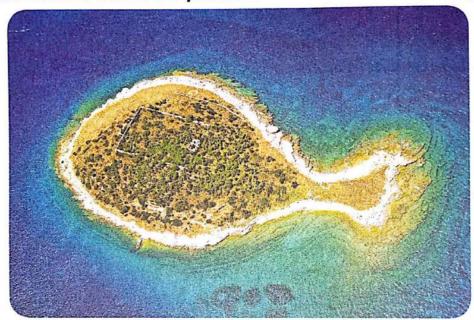
Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- Who wrote Robinson Crusoe?

1. Read the text and answer the questions.

WB page 91



Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of *Robinson Crusoe*, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone here. Defoe wrote *Robinson Crusoe* after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of the story?

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- How was your weekend?

1. Listen and answer the questions.

WB page 91



Girl :Hi, Lara. How was your weekend?

Lara: Oh, it was terrible.

Girl :Oh dear, what happened?

Lara: I went to the museum, but it was closed. Then I missed the bus so

I had to walk home.

Girl :Oh dear!

2

Boy 1: I love tennis. Do you agree that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2: I'm afraid, I don't agree.

3

Girl 1: What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Girl 2: Why don't go swimming?

Girl 1: I'm not sure. The swimming pool is not very near.

Girl 2: OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1:Good idea! I love the trees and plants there.

4

Boy 3: What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4: I think it's the worst book ever!

Post-listening question:

- Do you like swimming?



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What is the sixth largest country in the world?

2. Look at the table comparing Australia and Egypt. Work in pairs. Can you guess the answers?

SB page 33

Woman : Egypt is just over one million

square kilometres.

Man : Australia is the sixth largest country

in the world. It is just over seven

million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Woman: The highest mountain in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over

two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is

over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Woman: The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through

Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six

hundred kilometres long.

Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over

two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the

crocodiles!

Post-listening question:

- What's the longest river in the world?

Test 4

Based on Units 7,8 &9

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
1. When did the Sydney Harbour Bridge open?	
a) 1913. b) 1923. c) 1932.	d) 1930.
2. How long did it take to build?	
a) 8 years. b) 18 years. c) 8 months.	d) 18 months.
3. How long is the bridge?	
a) 1,419 m long. b) 1,491 m long. c) 1,914 m lor	ng. d) 1,941 m long.
4. How many cars cross the bridge? - More than	24 Ow77
a) 60,000 b) 106,000 c) 16,000	d) 160,000
2 Complete the following dialogue:	WB
Omar : What shall we do on Saturday?	
Hamdi: Why (1) we go rock climb	ing?
Omar: I'm not sure. It's quite dangerous. I'd (2)	do de la companya de
a different activity.	
Hamdi: OK. How about (3) basket	tball?
Omar: I don't know. I'm not very tall.	
Hamdi: OK, not rock climbing or basketball I know	v! Let's play tennis.
Omar : (4)idea! I always enjoy pl	aying tennis.
Hamdi: Where are we going to meet?	
Omar : (5) meet in front of the cl	ub.
Hamdi: OK, I'll be there.	

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday, I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge. It was very high and scary. But the views from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie of ourselves! Tonight, I am going

Test 4

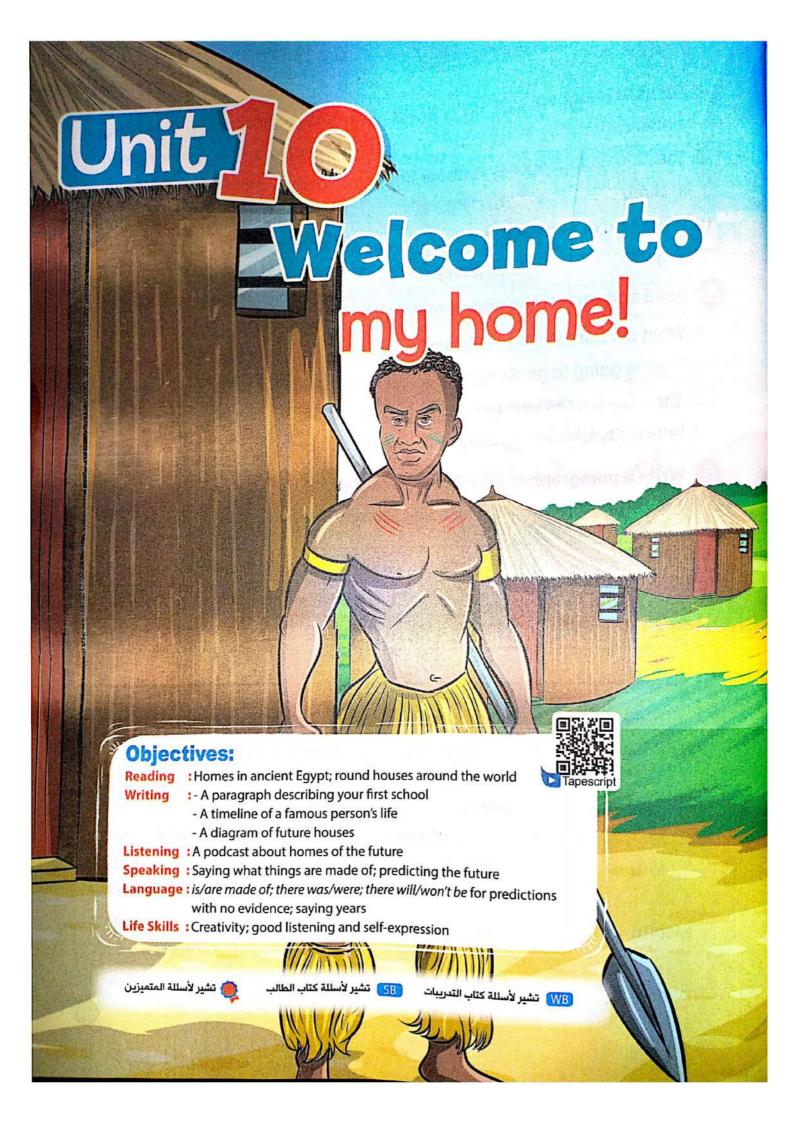
to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music! Tomorrow, I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

Love, Amy

A) Answer the following	g questions:		
1. Who wrote that em	ail?		
2. What does the unde	erlined pronoun " <mark>ou</mark>	rselves" refer to?	
3. How long does it ta	ke to get to Sydney f	from Melbourne?	
B) Choose the correct a			
4. She is going to the			
a) in two days		c) tomorrow	d) Both b and c
5. She felt	when she climbed	d Sydney Harbour Brid	dge.
a) scary	b) sacred		d) bored
6. She is in			
a) Bridge	b) Harbour	c) Melbourne	d) Sydney
4 Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. Diving, sailing and	windsurfing are diffe	erentspc	orts.
a) air		c) water	d) land
2. There was a really t	errible storm and his	ship	
a) thank	b) sank	c) drowned	d) sang
3. Can you play a mu	sical?		
a) instrument	b) equipment	c) machine	d) object
4. Ais a	big hole under the g	round.	
a) hall	b) bridge	c) cave	d) tunnel
5. Cairo is crowded	lots of to	urists.	
a) at	b) with	c) in	d) of
6. I won't get in this c	ave. Its	cary.	
	b) makes		d) looks
7. I took a guide to he			
a) find	b)take		d) watch

Review C

8. Australia	a is bigger	Egypt.	
a) there	b) that	c) than	d) then
9. She	Sydney Harbo	our Bridge yesterday.	
a) climb	W. S. W. W.		bs d) climbed
10. What kir	nd of music is Amy	to listen to to	onight?
a) go	b) going		N
Read an	d correct the underlin	ned words:	
1. What di	d Dareen <u>does</u> in Sydne	ey?	()
2. They're	going to go diving?		()
3. The bab	y girl can't eat by <u>hims</u>	elf.	()
4. Which c	ity is <u>more big</u> , Cairo o	r Alexandria?	()
6 Write a	paragraph of EIGHTY	(80) words on:	WB
	"An ama	azing journey you had	d"
		181	
F			
		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	





Vocabulary

Key Vocab	ulary		ات الرئيسية	المفرد	
lamp	لمبة/مصباح	cushions	وسائد	wallet	محفظة
statue	تمثال	sofa	كنبة	a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق
seat	مقعد ثابت	curtains	ستائر	teaspoon	ملعقة شاى
	Materi	als		المواد الخام	e elly whee
cotton	قطن	plastic	بلاستيك	wool	صوف
glass	زجاج	stone	حجر	metal	معدن
leather	جلد المالة	wood	خشب	paper	ورق

Additional Voc	abulary	افية	غردات الإذ	<u>all)</u>	10 70/10/2
the Stone Age	العصر الحجرى	object	شىء	socks	جوارب
television (TV)	تلفزيون	table	منضدة	tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى
skirt	جيبة	pencil case	مقلمة	bag	حقيبة

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Present	Past simple	Past participle		
make سنع	made	made		



Language Notes

made (of/ from/ in/ by)

made of

مصنوع من (المادة الخام لم تتفير ومازلنا نراها)

The sofa is made of leather.

made from

مصنوع من (المادة الخام تغيرت ولم نعد نراها)

• Glass is made from sand.

made in

مصنوع في (مكان الصنع)

My mother's valuable furniture is made in Damietta.

made by

معنوع بواسطة (الشخص/الشركة المعنعة)

My phone is made by Sico.

was called

سُمى/أطلق عليه اسم

• Why was the stone age called this?

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Paper is made wood.
 - a) by

b) with

c) of

d) from

2. Chairs are made wood.

a) by

b) with

c) of

d) from

3. This car is made Japan.

a) on

b) at

c) in

d) from

Listening

Pre-listening question:

What are car doors made of?

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

WB page 93







- معدن (1)
- زجاج (2)
- مقاعد ثابتة (3)
- جلد (4)
- بلاستيك (5)

Boy 1: What is a car made of?

Boy 2: That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things.

For example, a car door is made of metal⁽¹⁾ and the windows are made of glass⁽²⁾.

Boy 1: What are the seats(3) made of, where you sit?

Boy 2: I think expensive car seats are made of leather⁽⁴⁾. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic⁽⁵⁾.

Post-listening question:

- What are the seats of cars made of?



بنك الأسئلة

اختبر نفسك الأن

مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية من خلال بوابة الأضواء التعليمية ادخل علم: www.aladwaa.com



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the co	orrect answer from	a, b, c or d:
1. A car door is n	nade of	
a) wood	b) metal	c) leather
2	wa mada af	

1. A car door is made			d) cotton
a) wood	b) metal	c) leather	
2. Car windows are m	ade of		d) aloss
a) plastic	b) sand	c) stone	d) glass
3. It's easy to break	toys, so I don	't like them.	
a) stone	b) plastic	c) leather	d) cotton
4. We use to	put sugar in tea.		
a) glass	b) forks	c) socks	d) teaspoons
5. To go to work easil	y, I wish I can buy a/a	n car as I c	don't like driving.
a) toy	b) driverless	c) plastic	d) old
6. The carpenter uses	to make ta	bles and chairs.	
a) plastic	b) wool	c) wood	d) stone
7. A is made	e of leather.		
a) wallet	b) book	c) teaspoon	d) bottle
8. Cotton, glass, woo	d and wool are	and the same	
a) subjects	b) colours	c) materials	d) sports
9. There's a	in the living room wh	nere I can relax.	
a) sofa	b) table	c) window	d) TV
10. My best friend was	Marwan. H	le is living in Italy no	w.
a) call	b) calling	c) called	d) caller
11. During the journey	y, I saw the Sphinx wh	nich is made of	
a) stone	b) wool	c) glass	d) wood
12. People put	across windows to	keep the light out.	
a) rugs	b) curtains	c) cushions	d) sheets



Language

is/ are made of

- لوصف المواد الخام لشيء نستخدمه. :To describe materials of an object we use

Singular

المادة الخام (is made of) + (material) + الشيء المفرد The singular object

المفرد

- The sofa is made of leather.
- My book is made of paper.

Plural

المادة الخام (are made of) + (material) + الشيء الجمع

الجمع

- The cushions are made of cotton.
- My socks are made of wool.

Question

السؤال

What is + the singular object + (made of)? + الشيء المفرد

Singular

- What is the sofa made of?
- المفرد
- What is your book made of?

What are + the plural object الشيء الجمع + (made of)?

Plural

الجمع

- What are the cushions made of?
- What are your socks made of?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- What is your bags made of?
- My pencil case are made of plastic.



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

		or least to be the same	
1. This wallet	made of l	eather. It is fantastic.	d) were
alam	b) is	c) are	
2. My wife bought	new teaspoons whic	:h ma	ge of filetal.
a) was	b) am	c) is	d) are
3. What	the skirt made	of?	
a) is	b) are	c) were	d) am
4. Books are made	рар	er.	
a) in	b) by	c) of	d) from
5. The walls of my	new house	made of bricks	on a section all files
a) is	b) are	c) am	d) was
6. The cushions	of cott	on.	SB
a) made	b) is made	c) are made	d) are making
7. What's your	made of	f?	
a) socks	b) glasses	c) pants	d) shirt
8. What's bread m	ade?		-
a) of	b) in	c) by	d) from
9	your shoes made of	leather?	-
a) Is	b) Are	c) Was	d) Do
Read and corre	ect the underlined	words:	
1. The table are ma	ade of wood.		()
2. Is her new socks	made of wool?		()
3. The lamp made	of glass.		() WB
	/ flat are made <u>by</u> wo	ood.	()
5. Who's your jacke			()
			At a Mass da

Speaking

الإخبار عن مم صنعت الأشياء Saying what things are made of

جملة الرد Response ما يقال فى هذا الموقف Situation



- What is the wallet made of?

مم تصنع حافظة النقود؟

* It is made of leather.

💹 🥡 - تصنع من الجلد.



- What are the socks made of?

* They are made of wool.

سي - يصنع من الصوف.



مم يصنع الجهاز اللوحي (التابلت)؟ What is the tablet made of?

* It is made of glass and plastic. الزجاج والبلاستيك. المناع من الزجاج والبلاستيك.



- What is the statue made of?

مم يصنع التمثال؟

* It is made of stone.



مم تصنع ملاعق الشاي؟ ?What are the teaspoons made of

* They are made of metal.

🕟 🕡 - تصنع من المعدن.



- What is the toy made of?

مم تصنع لعبة الأطفال؟

* It is made of plastic.

🛴 - تصنع من البلاستيك.





Note:

When you are not sure of an answer, say I don't know or I'm not sure. You can also guess and say I think.

- عندما تكون غير متأكد من الإجابة قل (أنا لا أعرف أو أنا غير متأكد)، ومن الممكن أيضا أن تخمن وقل (أنا أعتقد).

• What is your pencil case made of?

مم تصنع المقلمة؟

- I don't know.

أنا لا أعرف.

• What is your bag made of?

مم تصنع حقيبتك؟

- I'm not sure; I think it is made of cotton.

أنا غير متأكد، أعتقد أنها مصنوعة من القطن.

Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad: Is this your guitar?

Omar :(1)_____

Ziad : What is it made of?

Omar : It's (2)..... wood. And what is this?

Ziad : It is my new (3)......

Omar : Really! When did you buy it?

Ziad :(4)......week.

Omar : (5)..... it made of metal?

Ziad: No. It is made of glass and plastic.

Omar: It is fantastic. You can use it to surf the internet.





Vocabulary

Key Vocal	bulary		فردات الرئيسية	الم	
bricks	ancient Egyp		السطح (سطح المبني)	oven	فرن
tap			t Egypt مصر القديمة (الفرعونية)	village	قرية
the Valley of the Kings وادى الملوك		the Nile	e Valley وادى النيل		

Additional Voc	abulary	<u>a</u>	فردات الإضاف		N. Cal
hot	حار	paint (ed)	يلون/ يدهن	living room	غرفة معيشة
painted walls	جدران مطلية	kitchen	مطبخ	people	ناس
colour	لون	bedroom	غرفة النوم	What colour?	ما لون؟

Language Expressions			age Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية				
work	>	in the valley	يعمل في الوادي	sleep	>	on the roof	ينام على السطح
paint	>	houses	يقوم بدهان المنازل	get	•	water	يحصل على الماء

Prepositi	ons			ب الجر	حروة	
workin	يعمل في	at night	ليلا	getf	rom	يحصل على من
sleep on	ينام <mark>عل</mark> ى	an oven for	فرن لعما	two kilm	nometres away	علی بعد ۲ کم



تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Present	Past simple	Past participle		
sleep ينام	slept	slept		

Language Notes

any

أى (تستخدم في الجملة المنفية أو الاستفهامية)

There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps.

but

ولكن (تعبر عن التناقض)

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms.

because

لأن (لإعطاء سبب)

People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I didn't go to school yesterday I was ill.
 - a) so
- b) but
- c) so that
- d) because

- 2. There weren't cars in ancient Egypt.
 - a) some
- b) any
- c) but
- d) about
- 3. I like watching football matches, I don't play football.
 - a) that's why
- b) but
- c) as
- d) to

Write it right

How to write about ancient Egypt كيفية الكتابة عن مصر القديمة (الفرعونية)

- The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago.
- They invented a lot of things.
- They lived in traditional houses.
- (وصف ما في المنزل) There were
- There weren't (وصف ما لم يكن موجودًا)
- They were really great.

Writing tips

- The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence.
- Other sentences are details that should support the topic sentence.
- أول جملة فى الفقرة الجملة الرئيسية.
 الجمل الأخرى تعطى تفاصيل تعزز الموضوع. هذه التفاصيل يمكنها أن تكون أسبابًا، أو وصفًا، أو أمثلة.

Example

Homes in ancient Egypt

The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago. They were clever and invented a lot of things. Their homes were really traditional. The walls of the houses were made of bricks. They were very strong. The doors were made of wood. There weren't any bedrooms. They slept on the roof of their houses because the weather was very hot at night. There was a kitchen in each home. They used to make delicious food. They ate broad beans for breakfast. They painted their homes in white and the doors in red. They were really great.

low, your turn:		عان دورك الآن:
	"An ancient Egyptian house"	
The ancient Eg	gyptians were famous for their wo	nderful buildings.
8-3		
1		

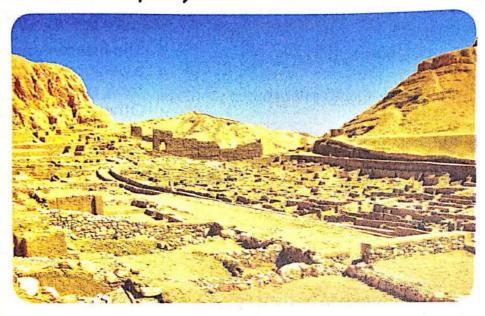


Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- Where did the people from Deir el-Medina work?

1. Read the text quickly. What is the main idea of the article? SB page 36



- مصر الفرعونية (1)
- قرية (2)
- وادى الملوك (3)
- طوب (4)
- حجرة معيشة (5)
- غرفة النوم (6)
- السطح (7)
- فرن (8)
- صنابير (9)
- وادى النيل (10)

Deir el-Medina

In ancient Egypt (1), there was a village (2) called Deir el-Medina.

The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings (3). There were 68 houses.

The walls of the houses were made of bricks (4) and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room (5), but there were not any bedrooms (6). People usually slept on the roof (7) because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven (8) for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps (9). People got their water from the Nile Valley (10), about two kilometres away.

Post-reading question:

- Why did people sleep on the roof?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct ar	iswer from a, b, c or	d:	
1. You useto bu	uild a wall.		WB
a) breaks	b) bricks	c) ovens	d) taps
2. The is on top	of a house.		be a county WB
a) wall	b) tap	c) oven	d) roof
3. You can turn on the	to get water.		WB
a) tap	b) tab	c) tape	d) tube
4. Our mother likes cook	ing. She is always in t	he	
a) bedroom	b) kitchen	c) oven	d) living room
5. All the Egyptians get t	heir water t	the Nile.	
a) at	b) into	c) for	d) from
6. There was a	called Deir el-Medina	a in ancient Egypt.	
a) city	b) town	c) village	d) country
7. The weather is very co	old herenig	ht.	
a) at	b) for	c) with	d) on
8. Adham works	a company. He is t	he manager of it.	
a) in	b) by	c) on	d) out
9. My dad likes driving r	modern cars	. they are fast.	tell en agins
a) but	b) about	c) because	d) so
10. I went on a school trip	o and visited the	of the Kings.	
a) Village	b) Bedroom	c) Living room	d) Valley
11. I want to buy	doors. I don't have	time to paint ther	n. 🧶
a) painting	b) paint	c) paints	d) painted
12. My school is very nea	r to my home. It is 20	0 metres	
a) way	b) a way	c) away	d) ways







1. A/An

• A and An have the same meaning.

The difference depends on the sound at the beginning of the next word.

- لهما نفس المعنى ويعتمد استخدامهما على الصوت الذي تبدأ به الكلمة.

When the next word starts with a **CONSONANT** SOUND

A

نستخدم (A) مع الكلمة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

When the next word starts with a **VOWEL** SOUND

An

نستخدم (An) مع الكلمة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

a book

a door

an apple

an orange

a car

a lemon

an egg

an umbrella

انتبه جيدًا لصوت الحرف. . The SOUND of the letter is important

a house But an hour

The **H** at the beginning of **hour** is **silent**.

an uncle But a university

The U at the beginning of University sounds like You.

2. Any

- We use any with Negative sentences / Yes/ No questions:
 - تستخدم (any) مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل:
- There weren't any taps in ancient Egypt.
- -Was there any money on the table?

3. There was/ There were

- نستخدم (there were/was) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجود شيء/أشياء في الماضي.

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There was water in ancient Egypt.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Were there an ovens in the ancient Egyptian kitchen?
- -There were any cars long ago.

There were

plural countable noun

not + any + plural countable noun اسم جمع یعد

- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- There wasn't any taps in ancient Egypt.

(.....)





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There weren't	cars in ancien	t Egypt.	A reconstruction
a) a	b) an	c) some	d) any
2. There was	water on the floo	or.	
a) a	b) an	c) any	d) no article
3. There	a glass of milk on the	table.	
a) am	b) was	c) are	d) were
4. There was usua	llyoven for	bread in the kitchen.	
a) any	b) a	c) an	d) some
5. There	. any food left in the p	arty yesterday.	
a) wasn't	b) weren't	c) isn't	d) aren't
6. There was	car waiting outsi	ide the hospital.	
a) any	b) an	c) some	d) a
7. There were	boys playing in	the street.	
a) a	b) an	c) any	d) no
8. There	a lot of bread in the l	kitchen this morning.	
a) were	b) are	c) was	d) is
2 Read and cor	rect the underlined v	vords:	
1. There weren't	some toys in the shop		()
2. Mido ate any a	pple as he was hungr	y.	()
3. There were an	y money with me.		()
4. Sara bought <u>a</u>	<u>n</u> new laptop.		()
5. There weren't	any <u>a bedroom</u> in anc	ient Egypt.	()
6. There aren't st	udents in the class yes	sterday. It was a holiday.	()

Lessons 1 & 2

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Teacher	: Can you tel	I me about things in	our school and what	they are made of?
Boy 1	: Windows (1)	m	ade of glass.
Boy 2	: Desks and	chairs are made of (2	2)	
Boy 3	: (3)		are made of	paper.
Teacher			are you	
Boy 1			F 3 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	
200				
Boys	:Thanks a lo			
1. My fa	ther studied h		c or d: eetbecause	our village had no
	icity at that ti	me. b) wood	c) metal	d) lamp
a) gla		1	ile watching the film.	
		b) curtain	c) cushion	d) statue
		where we relax	and watch TV.	
	ng room		c) valley	d) oven
4. Peop	e who lived in	n Egypt, bu	ilt the Pyramids.	
a) mo	dern	b) new	c) wide	d) ancient
5. To say	ve water, we s	hould repair old	···············• •	
a) tip	s	b) taps	c) tapes	d) tops
6. I bou	ght a	for my son on his b	pirthday.	
a) ski		b) toy	c) metal	d) socks
7. Ali bo	ought a pullo	ver which is made of		
a) wo	ood	b) wool	c) wall	d) well



8. What's your ne	w made of	?	D. L.L.
a) jeans	b) glasses	c) socks	d) shirt
9. There	any boats in ancier	nt Egypt. They used the	m to sail on the Nile.
a) wasn't	b) isn't	c) weren't	d) were
	a thief in the house	e. I could hear his voice	
a) was	b) wasn't	c) were	d) weren't
	ect the underlined		columba Cycle
1. There were a lo	ot of water in our stre	eet. It rained heavily ye	sterday. (
2. What is the cu			()
3. The sofa is ma	de in wood.		()
4. There was five	pounds on the floor	a water all left o steam	51790T ()
Mrito a parag	raph of Fighty (80)	words on:	
Write a parag		ancient Egypt"	
	Houses III	ancient Lgypt	
	B.D. Aux	CAGOS SASSES	raco está esporto (y
arrow ip the bar	autoetel	mad sehou meen web	siburgapital (M. F
			edi ta urkuttüüle
5 -51 P	1924	ingen ba	1 2 2 1 2 1
	anti est est daren en	edan jou Westlern L	2 Nada saf on a
1 692.31	a h- mahduda h-		paspager r u
	T mes u hos	walto tiw was it w	raskie mograniA i S
	eslice .	dinisit ()	***************************************
		The state of the s	orden parell
			t, Peaple wire.
	20	بنك الأسر	11201111
		ر نفسك الآن	CO SOLETION OF THE PARTY OF THE
	7 55	بر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية	مع أد
		لال بوابة الأضواء التعليمية على: www.aladwaa.com	
			ادحل
(CAL)			A Secretary A. Co.

Lessons 3&4

SB pages 38, 39 & 40 - WB pages 95 & 96

Vocabulary

Key Vocabi	ulary		ات الرئيسية	المفرد
electricity	الكهرباء	warm	دافئ	solar panels ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
robot	إنسان آلي	traditional	تقليدي	wind turbines توربينات الرياح
earthquake	زلزال	temperatu	درجة الحرارة Ire	بث إذاعي podcast
space	مساحة	cool	رطب	ضيف guest
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	sign	علامة/ لافتة	parcel
electric car	سيارة كمربائية	rockets	صواريخ	
desprise of	Kinds	of round hou	المستديرة ses	أنواع المنازل
igloo	كوخ الإسكيمو	yurt	مهجع (خيمة)	and the second
	Shape	es		الأشكال
round	مستدير الشكل	square	مربع / مربع الشكل	rectangular مستطيل الشكل

Additional Vocabulary	فردات الإضافية	الم
swimming pool حمام سباحة	use(d) يستخدم	suddenly فجأة
journey رحلة	ما شكل؟ 9 What shape	الكرة الأرضية Earth
accident حادثة	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد 3D printer	safer اکثر امانا
plastic bricks طوب بلاستیکی	modern عدیث	reason بيب
shape شكل/ هيئة	winds ریاح	quieter أكثر هدوءا
materials مواد خام	fantastic رائع	disadvantage عيب
Countri	es	حول
Canada کندا	Burkina Faso بوركينا فاسو	Mongolia منغوليا

Unit 0

	التعبيرات	التعبيرات اللغوية ns		Language Expressions		
حافظ على الدفء	warm			electricity يحصل على الكهرباء	get >	
حافظ على الجو رطبا	cool		keep	buildings مبانی	design >	
حضر طرودا	parcels	>	bring	snow ثلوج كثيفة		
rs يستخدم طابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد	3D printer	>	use	rain مطرغزير	heavy >	

Prepositions	S	ألهر	حروف
on the moon	على القمر	for holiday من أجل الإجازة	work on a project یعمل فی مشروع
get to	يصل إلى	drive to	a picture of
fall from	يسقط من	important for عام لـ	around the world حول العالم

Words and	Opposi	tes	الكلمات وعكسم	
traditional	تقليدي	مدیث modern	قوی strong	weak ضعیف
important	مهم	unimportant فير مهم	auiet هادئ	noisy صاخب
inside	بالداخل	outside بالخارج	advantages مزایا	disadvantages عيوب

الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
Pre	esent	Past simple	Past participle
leave	ا يغادر	eft	left
fall	ا يسقط	fell	fallen

Definitions	yeres	التعريفات	
space	>	An area that you can move around.	مساحة
warm	>	A nice temperature that is hot but not too hot.	دافئ
cool	>	A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold.	رطب/ معتدل
earthquake	>	When the ground suddenly moves.	زلزال

Language Notes

lots of = a lot of

كثيرا من (تأتى قبل الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد)

• There will be lots of solar panels.

fast

سريع/بسرعة (تستخدم كحال أو ظرف)

- My new car is very fast.
- My new car runs fast.

مستطیل الشکل rectangular المستطیل / rectangle

- Can you draw a rectangle, Bassem?
- Are round buildings quieter than rectangular buildings?

too + adj.

The box was too heavy for me to lift.

Check Point

Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a, b	, C	or	d
CHOOSE	ciic				100000000000000000000000000000000000000			

- 1. It'shot, so it's a good idea to go to the beach today.
 - a) toe

b) to

c) two

d) too

- 2. Our house is
 - a) circle
- b) rectangular
- c) rectangle
- d) around

Write it right

How to write about your future predictions. كيفية الكتابة عن تنبؤاتك المستقبلية.

- In the future we'll (فعل).
- We will travel to (المكان).
- They will have (اشياء).
- There will be (اختراعات).
- There won't be (أشياء تقليدية).
- I think life will be exciting in the future.

Writing tips

Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic. You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing. استخدم المفردات التي تلائم الموضوع. يمكنك التفكير في المفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

My predictions for the future

We use modern technology more and more in our daily life. In the future, I think everything will depend on computers. We will have tiny computers in our clothes to keep us warm or to make us cool. At school, I think computers will be our teachers, but we should always have teachers. I think we won't live in crowded cities, we will live on other planets. In the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity. They will be better for the environment. They will be very fast.

ow, your turn:		حان دورك الآن:
	"How life will be like	in the future"
In the futu	re, we'll	

Listening

Pre-listening question: - Where will you find gardens in the future?

2. Listen to an interview with an architect, Dina Hassan. Which three sentences does Dina say about her house of the future?

SB page 38

Presenter: Hello, welcome to our podcast(1): Homes of the

Future. Today, we have a special guest⁽²⁾ – Dina

Hassan. She is a famous architect. Hello, Dina.

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer: What does an architect do?

Dina : Well, I design buildings such as houses or schools.

I think about what materials to use and I draw

pictures of it.

Interviewer: What are you designing at the moment?

Dina : I'm working on a project for houses for the future.

They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

Interviewer: In what ways will they be different?

Dina : Well, I think we'll need more

gardens in the future, but there won't be much space⁽³⁾. So the

garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer: A garden on the roof, great!

Dina : And I think people will all use

electric cars⁽⁴⁾ in the future, so there'll be chargers⁽⁵⁾ for electric

car next to the house.

Interviewer: How will people get their electricity?

Dina : There'll be lots of solar panels⁽⁶⁾

and a wind turbine(7). They'll make

the electricity(8).







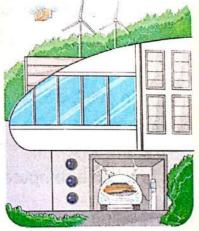












Interviewer: Great. What else will be different in 2050?

Dina : Well, I think there will be robots (9) to do all the

housework.

Interviewer: Fantastic! Will people use drones(10)?

Dina : Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels(11)

to the house.

Interviewer: What materials will the house be made of?

Dina : We will use plastic bricks that are very strong. We'll also use a lot

of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.

Interviewer: Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to

us. I think I'll like living in this house!

Post-listening question: - What materials will the house be made of in the future?

Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- How long will the journey to the moon take in 2080?

5. Read and circle the correct words.

SB page 39

Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach (1) for your holiday (2). You will go to the moon (3)! There will be rockets (4) that leave Earth every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast (5)!



شاطئ (1)

إنسان آلي (9)

طرود (11)

طائرات بدون طيار (10)

- إجازة (2)
- القمر (3)
- صواريخ (4)
- سريع (5)
- سيارة بدون سائق (6)
- أكثر أمانا (7)
- حوادث (8)

Driverless cars

In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car (6). They will be safer (7) and there won't be any accidents (8). Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!



Post-reading question:

- Do you think life in 2080 will be interesting? Why? Why not?

3

Lesson

Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- Why is a round building cheaper to build?

1. Look at the photos. What shape are all the houses?
Why do you think they are this shape?

SB page 40

مستدير (1)

تقلیدی (2)

حدیث (3)

زلزال (4)

أكثر هدوءًا (5)

مستطيل (6)

مريع (7)

فراغ/ مساحة (8)

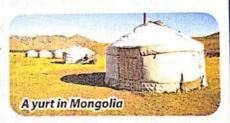
Round(1) houses around the world

Many traditional (2) houses in the past (2) were round.

Today, many modern (3) houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons!



A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake (4) or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof.



A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter⁽⁵⁾ inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle⁽⁶⁾ or square⁽⁷⁾.



Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make). It also has more space (8) inside. How fantastic!



Post-reading question:

- Can you think of any disadvantages to a round house?



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b), c or d:	WB				
1can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.							
a) Rockets	b) Robots	c) Turbines	The state of the s				
is an area that you can move around in.							
a) Star	b) Solar	c) Space	d) Wind				
3. In the future, people will all usecars.							
a) electrical	b) electronic	c) electricity	d) electric				
	also easier to	warm or cool.	SB				
a) keep	b) build	c) save	d) move				
5. We put panels on a roof. They produce electricity using the sun. WB							
a) space	b) robot	c) drone	d) solar				
6. In the future, there will be that leave Earth every day.							
a) solar panels	b) rockets		d) robots				
7. A can fly, but it does not have a pilot.							
a) space	b) plane	c) drone	d) car				
8. In some villages, there are houses which were built in the past.							
a) traditional	b) new	c) modern	d) fast				
9. A/An is	when the earth sudd	enly moves.					
a) igloo	b) accident	c) earthquake	d) temprature				
10. Windus	e the wind to produc	ce electricity.	WB				
a) turbines	b) robots	c) rockets	d) panels				
11. I want a good	to design my r	new villa.					
a) architect	b) pilot	c) driver	d) teacher				
12. Tourists are our		e friendly with them.					
a) relatives	b) guests	c) friends	d) enemies				
13. How amazing! The which my uncle sent to me, contains a new mobile							
phone.		a de la companya de la compaña	endault des ns.				
a) parcel	b) letter	c) email	d) postcard				

Language

Making predictions about the future



مع الجمل المثبتة WITH POSITIVE SENTENCES

(Subject + will + (inf.) +)

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- We will go to the moon in the future.
- She will have a garden on the roof in the future.

Making predictions about the future

عمل تنبؤات عن المستقبل



مع الجمل المنفية WITH NEGATIVE SENTENCES

(Subject + won't + (inf.) + \dots)

- Therewon't be robot teachers in the future.
- We will not live on the moon in the future.
- Robots will not be our teachers in the future.

?

مع الأسئلة WITH QUESTIONS

(Will + Subject + (inf.) +?)

- Will there be electric cars in the future?
- Will we live on the moon in the future?
- Will she have a garden on the roof in the future?

Read and correct the underlined word:

-Do we all have driverless cars in the future?

.....)



Language Exercises

1 Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:		SB
1. You will to a) go	the moon one day. b) went	c) goes		d) gone
2. People dr a) won't	b) wouldn't	c) don't		d) didn't
3. In 2080, people a) drive	a car. They will b) won't drive	use a driverless c) will drive	car.	d) drives
4my daugł a) Would	nter be a doctor in th b) Did	e future? c)Will		d) Has
5. In 2080, the journe a) takes	y to the moon will b) taken	only 12	hours.	d) take
6. Driverless cars willa) will	be safer. Thereb) won't	be any accid	dents.	d) weren't
7. People will all	electric cars.			
a) using	b) use	c) used		d) uses
8. A: Do you think we	e'll live on other plane	ets, Ali? B: No, w	e	
a) don't	b) won't	c) aren't		d) didn't
Read and correct	the underlined wor	rds:		
1. There will is rocket	s that leave earth eve	ery day.	() SB
2. Students will to re	ad a book when the o	car drives them		
to school.			() SB
3. Do you think we w	ill <u>having</u> robot teach	ners?	() <u>\$B</u>
4. <u>Did</u> we live in und	erground cities in the	e future?	()
5. There will be any a	ccidents.	THE THE PARTY	() SB 🧶

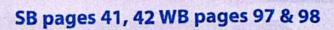
Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

1 Listen and cho	ose the correct answer fi	rom a, b, c or d: الكتاب	(نص الاستماع في نهاية
1. When will we h			
a) In the past.	b) In the future.	c) In the present.	d) Next week.
2. What will electi	ric cars use?		
a) Petrol.	b) Gas.	c) Electricity.	d) Water.
3. A: Will it be har	d to drive electric cars in	traffic? B: No, it will be	·
a) difficult.	b) easy.	c) different.	d) hard.
4. What will elect	ric cars be better for?		
a) The environr	ment. b) The land.	c) The air.	d) The park.
O Pead the follo	wing, then answer the	guestions:	
Long ago, per	ople could only walk or	travel on boats, horses	or camels. Then
neonle invented	bicycles and later trains	, cars and planes. In tl	ne future, we will
have small electr	ric cars. They will be easy	to drive in traffic. The	se cars won't use
netrol They will i	use electricity, so they wi	II be better for the env	vironment. Now a
lot of cities have	too many cars. These citie	es will build more metr	o lines, so people
	et around the cities quick		
A) Answer the follo			
1. How could peo	ople travel long ago?		
2 What does the	underlined word "they"	refer to?	
3. In your opinion	n, why will electric cars b	e better for the enviro	nment?
	ect answer from a, b, c		
	will build more metro		4
a) dots	b) lines		d) buildings
5.45	ill be to drive ir	traffic.	
a) hard			
C)	b) easy	c) difficult	d) terrible
The Property of the Parket	114/2/401	c) difficult	



3 Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The driverless cars	will stude	nts to school.	
a) drive	b) ride	c) fly	d) cycle
2. A lot of houses fell	because of a strong	······································	ofere age to day
a) earthquake	b) parcel	c) turbine	d) electricity
3. In the future, we w	ill not have TVs, we w	ill watch films on	
a) radios	b) tablets	c) tables	d) cushions
4. My brother had a/a	an because	e he drives very fast	
a) holiday	b) accident	c) sign	d) drone
5. To be me	eans to be in a nice temp	perature that is hot bu	
a) warm	b) cool	c) hot	d) cold
6. Strong	can cause damage	to many buildings.	
a) fog	b) snow	c) winds	d) weather
7. Electric cars use	Breat		
a) electricity	A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR	c) fuel	d) gas
8. In the future, I thir	nk Egypt will	the world cup.	
a) win	b) wins	c) won	d) winning
9. In 2060, there	robot teacher		
a) is	b) will not be		d) will be
	ve travel in the future?		
a) do	b) did	c) are	d) will
Read and correct	the underlined word	ds:	
1. In the future, we	will <u>has</u> cities under th	e sea.	(
2. One day, we will t	o build houses using 3	3D printers.	(
3. In 2050, we are al	l use electric cars.		(
4. By using a driverle	ess car, we <u>will</u> be in d	anger.	(
Write a paragrap	h of Eighty (80) word	ds on:	
• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		redictions"	
COSAT BARRAS SA			





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية			المفردات
imagination	خيال	size	جبل کلیمنجارو Mount Kilimanjaro جبل کلیمنجارو
creative	مبدع	technology ِ تكنولوجيا	لاعب كرة إفريقي African footballer ال
writing task	مهمة كتابة	important events داث هامة	European Champions League

Additional Vocabulary	يلة	ات الإضاف	المقرد	
learn (learnt/learned) العام	idea	فكرة	mountain	جبل جبل
Switzerland سويسرا	look (ed) like	يشبه	shape	شكل

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية						
be	>	born in	ولد في	write	>	down يدون
ride	•	a bike	يركب دراجة	make		a plan يعمل خطة
start	>	school	يبدأ الدراسة	climb	>	a mountain يتسلق جبل

Prepositions			الجر	حروف	
move to	ينتقل إلى	on holiday	في الإجازة	different to	مختلف عن

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Present	Past simple	Past participle		
ride يركب	rode	ridden		
keep يحتفظ	kept	kept		



Language Notes

Saying years

قراءة الأعوام

Years

Years are normally divided into two parts

1984

nineteen eighty-four

تنقسم الأعوام عادة إلى جزأين

1066 ten sixty-six

1652 sixteen fifty-two

1941 nineteen forty-one

2017 twenty seventeen

When a year ends in a number between 01 and 09, then that last part is pronounced as the name of the letter O + number.

- عندمــا ينتهى عام بين الأرقــام (٠١ - ٠٩) ينطق الصفر نطق الحرف «O».

1709 seventeen O nine

1901 nineteen O one

When a year ends in 00 (e.g. 1600), then the year is said as the digits before 00, and then hundred.

- يقرأ الرقم المنتهى بـ (٠٠) كالتالى:

1300 thirteen hundred

1800 eighteen hundred

2000 - 2010

For the year **2000** you say (the year) **two thousand**.

- يقرأ العام ۲۰۰۰ (Two thousand):

For the years 2001 to 2010, we normally say

- تقرأ الأعوام من ٢٠٠١ إلى ٢٠١٠ كالتالي:

two thousand and + number.

2001 two thousand and one

2005 two thousand and five

2008 two thousand and eight

After 2010

For the first year after 2010, you may hear two different versions.

- الأعوام التي تلي ٢٠١٠ تقرأ بطريقتين:

2012 two thousand and twelve

2012 twenty twelve

لاحظ:

- لا نقوم بجمع الكلمات (thousand / hundred)

في حالة وجود رقم قبلها.

two thousand and twenty

seventeen hundred



Pre-listening question:

- Where was Basel born?

3. Listen to Basel and complete the timeline.

SB page 41

Basel: Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events(1) in my life.

I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012.

جبل كلمنجارو (2)

I liked my school!

I learned to ride a bike in 2013. I love my bike! In 2018, we moved to a new house. We live in Cairo now.



In 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea.

It was amazing!

In 2023, I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro⁽²⁾ – I hope so anyway!

3. Listen to the life of Mohammed Salah and complete the dates.

انتقل إلى (3).

WB page 97

لاعب كره قدم إفريقي (4)

دوری أبطال أوربا (5)

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to (3) Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012.

In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah



was also African Footballer⁽⁴⁾ of the Year in 2017, and in 2019, he won the European Champions League⁽⁵⁾ with Liverpool.

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of Mohamed Salah?



Vocabulary Exercises

	answer from a, b, c o		
1. Mohamed Salah wo	on theChai	mpions League with L	iverpool.
a) African	b) European	The second secon	d) American
2. In 2014, Salah went	to London to play	Chelsea.	
	b) out		d) to
3. My family	to a new house in 2	015.	
	b) moved		d) kept
4. When were you	<u>an wet </u> Printle value in		
a) born	b) burn	c) bear	d) barn
5. This year is two	and twenty.		
a) thousands	b) thousand	c) hundred	d) hundreds
6. When did you lear	n to a bike,	Aya?	
a) drive	b) sail	c) fly	d) ride
7. My father	a mountain in 2010		
a) climbed	b) jumped	c) built	d) made
8. In 2017, I went to	Alexandria	holiday.	
a) by	b) on	c) with	d) to
9. Many traditional	African houses are rour	nd in	
a) ship	b) shop	c) chop	d) shape
10. Can you write	your notes her	re, please?	
a) up	b) down	c) on	d) with
11. What are the	you will use to	build your house?	
a) materials	b) sports	c) subjects	d) roads
12. Tablets, laptops a	nd smartphones are ki	nds of new	. a .c. /207
a) diagrams	b) technology	c) houses	d) details

Writing Skills

How to plan a creative writing task

كيف تخطط لمهمة كتابة إبداعية؟

Read and match the sentences to the pictures.







- 1. c First, think of as many ideas as you can. What will the house look like? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down or draw your ideas. Use your imagination and have fun!
- Then, decide which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.
- 3. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail. How can you make the ideas work? Make a plan (maybe in a diagram or drawing). You can change any ideas that don't work.

Speaking

طيفية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط زمنى طونية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط

- I was born in 2007.
- I started school in 2013.
- I learnt to ride a bike in 2014.
- I moved to a new house in 2016.

- ولدت عام ۲۰۰۷.
- بدأت الدراسة عام ٢٠١٣.
- تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٤.
- انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٦.

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

d) plate

1 Complete the fo	ollowing dialogue:		
	sma. When were you b	orn?	
	rn in (1)		
Habiba : when di	d you (2)	two thou	isand seven.
	school (3)	_	Jana
	learn to ride a (4)		
Basma: Yes, I did	d		
Basma: Last yea	r. Pultur e publi grap		
2 Choose the con	rrect answer from a, b		
1. Have you got a	nyabout how	to build a new hous	se?
a) ideas	b) planes	c) materials	d) objects
2. Kilimanjaro is a	famousin Af	rica.	
a) sea		c) lake	
3. Use your imagi	nation, be		
a) traditional	b) old	c) creative	d) ancient
4. What will the h	ouse you dream of loo	k?	
a) out	b) after	c) up	d) like
5. Big, small, large	e and medium are	A Sales and and	
a) sizes	b) shapes	c) colours	d) sports
6. Mr Waleed tau	ght us how to plan a cr	eative writing	
a) ťask	b) mask	c) ask	d) tusk
7. It's important t	ofor your fut		M) CUSIC
a) plan	b) plane	c) plain	d) plate

Welcome to my home!

8. What are your	made of?		
a) book	b) shoes	c) bag	d) wallet
9. In 2030, Egypt	be one of t	he greatest countries	in the world.
a) will	b) would	c) have	d) did
10 there	any taps in ancient	Egyptian houses?	
a) Are	b) Did	c) Were	d) Will
Read and corre	ct the underlined	words:	
1. What's your jack	ket making of?		()
2. I will have <u>a</u> ele	ctric car in the future	e.	()
3. Many clocks <u>is</u> r	made of metal and p	olastic.	()
4. Do you think w	e'll <u>lives</u> on the moo	n in the future?	()
	"Your house	e in the future"	baa to rune will
	"Your house	e in the future"	
		Carrie and the St.	13.915 B Y 97-51
ill die ee	or profit solting	ni ni misupitan iki	Costs have reserved "
		4 . 2 7 193	_= _= =G; =
	a Adoren	of the first throughout	where him
0000	elgi	متجر الأد	
Tel Jara		نقاطك واستبدلها	in a
	in the Surface of the	ب بمجموعة من الهدايا الرائعة وجودة علم متجر الأضواء	الأر
		وبوده عنی فنجر الاطواء خل علی: www.aladwaa.com	
Page 1			1,4127



Videoscript

SB page 39

Do you live in a village or in a city?

And do you live on the coast⁽¹⁾, near the sea or in the desert⁽²⁾?

There are often different houses for each place.

This house is a traditional Nubian house. The floors⁽³⁾ are made of sand⁽⁴⁾ and there is normally a bench⁽⁵⁾ outside each house to sit on. This is made of mud⁽⁶⁾.

These Nubian houses are in Aswan. They're very colourful.

There are paintings on the walls of Nubian houses of things like fish, crocodiles⁽⁷⁾ and palm trees⁽⁸⁾.

The door of each house usually faces⁽⁹⁾ south. This is to protect people from the strong wind from the north.

Houses will probably be different in the future. Many houses will be made of recycled material⁽¹⁰⁾ or natural material⁽¹¹⁾, like wood.

This hotel is in Siwa and it's made of natural materials. The roof⁽¹²⁾ is made of palm trees.

Many houses in the future will use the sun for electricity. This is called solar power⁽¹³⁾.

What type of house do you want to live in? Is it a house?

Or is it an apartment? There are lots of different places to live in.

الساحل (1)

صحراء (2)

الأرضية (3)

رمال (4)

مقعد (5)

طين (6)

تماسیح (7)

نخيل (8)

يواجه (9)

مواد معاد تصنيعها (10)

مواد طبيعية (11)

السقف (12)

الطاقه الشمسية (13)

Unit 10 Review

Vocabulary

Vocabulary			ىفردات		
lamp	مصباح	cushions	وسائد	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي
statue	تمثال	sofa	كنبة	oven	فرن
bricks	الطوب	curtains	ستائر	village	قرية
tap	صنبور/ حنفية	roof بنی)	السطح (سطح الم	shape	شكل
the Valley of t	he Kings وادى الملوك	ancient Egypt فرعونية)	مصر القديمة (الد	size	حجم
plan	يخطط	the Nile Valley	وادى النيل /	technology	التكنولوجيا
creative	مبدع	imagination	خيال	solar panels مسية	ألواح الطاقة الش
writing task	مهمة كتابة	diagram	رسم توضيحي	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
electricity	الكهرباء	drone	طائرة بدون طيار	cool	رطب
robot	إنسان آلي	electric car	سيارة كهربائية	sign	علامة/ لافتة
earthquake	زلزال	warm	دافئ	rockets	صواريخ
space	مساحة	traditional	تقليدي	a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق
African footb	aller لاعب كرة إفريقي	European Chan	npions League دوری أبطال أوربا	temperature	درجة الحرارة
	Shape	5	S Breddings	الأشكال	
round	مستدير الشكل	square	مربع	rectangular	مستطيل الشكل
1	Materi	als	لخام	المواد اا	
cotton	قطن	plastic	بلاستيك	wool	صوف
glass	زجاج	stone	حجر	metal	معدن
leather	جلد	wood	خشب	paper	الورق





To describe materials of an object we use

لوصف المواد الخام لشىء نستخدمه

1. is/are made of

Subject + is / are + made of (material)

Form

التكوين

- The sofa is made of leather.
- The cushions are made of cotton.

Question

السؤال

What + is / are + subject + made of?

- What is the sofa made of?
- What are the cushions made of?

2. There was / There were

- نستخدم (there were/was) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجود شيء/أشياء في الماضي.
- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.
- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

3. Making predictions about the future

(Subject + will + (inf.) +)

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be robot teachers in the future.

Welcome to my home!

Speaking

1. Saying what things are made of الإخبار عن مم صنعت الأشياء

Question	Answer
What is the wallet made of?	- It is made of leather.
What are the socks made of?	- They are made of wool.
3 What is the statue made of?	- It is made of stone.
What are the teaspoons made of?	- They are made of metal.
6 What is the toy made of?	- It is made of plastic.

2. How to write your timeline

كيفية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط زمنى

- I was born in 2007.
- I started school in 2013.
- I learnt to ride a bike in 2014.
- I moved to a new house in 2016.

- ولدت عام ۲۰۰۷.
- بدأت الدراسة عام ٢٠١٣.
- تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٤.
- انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٦.

Test

based on Unit 10

	Listen and choose	e the correct answer fron	a, b, c or d: (-) الاستماع في نهاية الكتار	إنصر
	1. Where will most	people live?			
	a) In water.	b) In skyscrapers.	c) In space.	d) In seas.	
	2. How are cities no	w?			
	a) Full.	b) Fill.	c) Empty.	d) Dangerou	JS.
	3. How will spaces i	n cities be in the future?			
	a) Enough.	b) Not enough.	c) Many.	d) Few.	
	4. How will skyscra	pers be in the future?			
	a) Lower.	b) Higher.	c) Weaker.	d) Stronger.	
(2 Complete the fo	llowing dialogue:			
		r new shoes. What are the			
	Tasnem: They are	made of (1)	Maddle .	that the same	
	Wafaa : When did	d you (2)	them	?	
	Tasnem: I bought	them last week.			
	Wafaa : Who bou	ight them for you?			
	Tasnem: My (3)				
	Wafaa : (4)	?			
	Tasnem: It was my	y birthday.			
	Wafaa : Great. Ca	n you come with me to b	uy a pair for me?	a felicidi (Passi) e	
	Tasnem: (5)				

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Materials are very important in our life. Metals can be used to make cars, bicycles and machines. We can also use plastic to make rulers, chairs and some tables. We can get oil and gold from mines which are underground. It's dangerous to go inside mines, but we get a lot of money from them. Cotton is used to make clothes. We can make blankets, jumpers and other clothes from wool.

L)	Answer the following	questions:						
	1. What's the passage about?							
	1. What's the passage about? 2. What is plastic used for?							
	3. Why do you think m	naterials are importai	nt?					
3)	Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c o	rd:					
	4. Cars are made of	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		Comp. III				
	a) gold	b) metal	c) rubber	d) cotton				
	5. The underlined wor	d "them" refers to		A				
	a) jumpers	b) materials	c) mines	d) blankets				
	6. What can we make	from wool?						
	a) Jumpers.	b) Tablets.	c) Blankets.	d) a and c				
4	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:					
	1. There are four	on the sofa.						
	a) chairs	b) cushions	c) tables	d) windows				
	2. I use my to	o log into the interne	et.					
		b) pencil case	c) CD	d) tablet				
	3 are usually	y made of stone.						
	a) Statues	b) Books	c) Shoes	d) Laptops				
	4 cars can g	o without a driver.						
	a) Driverless	b) Electric	c) Old	d) Traditional				
	5. When it's,	it's cold but not too	cold.					
	a) hot	b) sunny		d) cool				
	6 building is	s cheaper to make ar	nd has more space i	nside.				
	a) Around	b) A round	c) A circle	d) A rectangle				
	7. Ancient Egyptians	their house	s white.					
	u/ Du	b) bought		d) met				
	8. There is Er	nglish book in my ba	g.					
	a) a	b) any	c) an	d) no article				
	9 were anci	ent Egyptian doors m	nade of?					
	a) When	b) Where	c) Why	d) What				
1	0. There any	planes in ancient Eg	ypt.					
	a) are	b) aren't	c) were	d) weren't				



Read and correct the underlined words:	
1. Was there boats in ancient Egypt?	()
2. A: What is this bottle made from? B: Plastic.	(
3. There's an tree in front of my house.	()
4. Do you think we would have robot doctors in the future?	()
6 Write a paragraph of Eighty (80) words on:	WB
Annual II	
15 - 24c/ Q	
Control of the same	
Live and a state of a	3 W T







Vocabulary

Key Vocabu	ılary	ä	فردات الرئيسي	مال	
land	اليابسة	ocean	محيط	danger	خطر
protect (ed)	يحمى	poisonous	سام	sting	يلدغ
	Sea ani	imals	بحرية	حيوانات	
coral reef	الشعب المرجانية	shark	سمكة القرش	whale	حوت
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	stingray	السمكة اللادغة	octopus	أخطبوط
turtle	سلحفاة بحرية				

Additional V	/ocabulai	ry ä	فردات الإضافيا	مال	757 Te.7 T
shell	صدفة	tooth (teeth)	سن (أسنان)	flat	مسطح
touch (ed)	يلمس	hard	صلب	tail	ذيل

Lang	uage Expression	IS CAL	التعبيرات اللغوية	7 5 T
be	in danger	یکون فی خطر	lose > a tooth	يفقد سنًا من الأسنان
feel	▶ tired	يشعر بالتعب	touch ▶ a jellyfish	يلمس قنديل البحر
have	▶ a test	لديه اختبار	forget ▶ my pencil case	أنسى مقلمتي

Prepositions	\$		الاجر	حروف	
protect from	يحمى من	go into	يدخل في	jump out of	يقفز خارج
hit with	يضرب بــ	swim away	يسبح بعيدًا	in danger	فی خطر

Words and Opposites				الكلمات وعكسها			
danger	الخطر	safety	الأمان	heavy	ثقيل	light	خفیف
noisy	صاذب	quiet	هادئ	lose	يفقد/ يخسر	win	يفوز

Conjug	ations of Irregula	ظمة Verbs	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة	
	resent	Past simple	Past participle	
V	ينمو	grew	grown	
n	يعوم/ يسبح	swam	swum	

	. resent	i ast simple	I ast participie
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
swim	يعوم/ يسبح	swam	swum
sting	يلدغ	stung	stung
hit	يخبط/ يضرب	hit	hit
lose	يفقد/ يخسر	lost	lost

Language Notes

hard

تستخدم كصفة/ظرف بمعانى مختلفة (صلب - صعب - بجدية).

- The seats in the room were very hard.
 - The exam was hard. It had very difficult questions.
 - I study hard to get high marks.

other

أخر (یأتی بعدها اسم جمع)

• I bought other books yesterday.

another

أخر (یأتی بعدها اسم مفرد أو رقم)

- I bought another book yesterday.
- I bought another five books yesterday.

poisonous

سام (بطبيعته) أو فاسد (مع الطعام أو الشراب)

• This is a poisonous snake. Don't touch it.

poisoned

مسمم (وضع فيه السمر)

• This food is poisoned. I saw someone put poison in it.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. It's for me to climb a mountain.
 - a) hardness b) hardly
- c) hardest
- d) hard
- 2. I feel sleepy, so I'm going to havecup of coffee.
 - a) another
- b) other
- c) others
- d) the others



Reading



Pre-reading question:

- How many sea animals can you see?

1. Read and complete the text with a word from the photos.

SB page 45

Dangers of the sea

The shark⁽¹⁾ is one of the most dangerous sea animals⁽²⁾ in the ocean⁽³⁾. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!



A stingray⁽⁶⁾ is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reef⁽⁷⁾. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A sea turtle (8) has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast – the octopus (9) has got eight legs to help it!



- سمكة القرش (1)
- حيوانات بحرية (2)
- محيط (3)
- يحمى (4)
- الخطر (5)
- السمكة اللادغة (6)
- الشعب المرجانية (7)
- سلحفاة بحرية (8)
- الأخطبوط (9)
- (2) -3.
- قنديل البحر (10)
- سام (11)
- الحوت (12)

Some sea life, like the jellyfish⁽¹⁰⁾ is poisonous⁽¹¹⁾. It stings you when you touch it.

What about the whales(12)? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails!









Post-reading question:

- How many legs does the octopus have?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose th	e correct answer	from a, b, c or d:
-----------	------------------	--------------------

1. Theis one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.							
a) dolphin	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) turtle				
2. A is a big, fla	2. A is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reefs.						
a) stingray	b) turtle	c) octopus	d) shell				
3. A shark uses more tha	n 20,000ir	its life.	SB				
a) tails	b) legs	c) fins	d) teeth				
4. A sea has a	hard shell to protect	it.	SB				
a) octopus	b) turtle	c) whale	d) stingray				
5. We should try to	a lot of trees to	help the environme	nt.				
a) lose	b) plant	c) keep	d) attend				
6. The is poiso	onous. It stings you w	hen you touch it.					
a) whale	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) turtle				
7. Mona jumped	the water becaus	e it was very cold.					
a) out	b) in	c) from	d) out of				
8. You should	yourself from the co	ld. Put on your coat.					
a) protect	b) help	c) sting	d) hit				
9. The snake is a	animal. Don't get	near to it.					
a) poisoned	b) poison	c) poisoning	d) poisonous				
10. How often do you	a maths test	?					
a) lose	b) have	c) grow	d) forget				
11 are big, he	11are big, heavy animals that hit with their big tails.						
a) Stingrays	b) Whales	c) Walls	d) Snakes				
12. He drove so fast tha	it I really felt my life w	as in					
a) danger	b) help	c) relax	d) safe				
13. Her daughter cried	because she was	by a bee.					
a) stung	b) swum	c) grown	d) eaten				





Language

1. The present simple tense:

زمن المضارع البسيط:

تذكر أن المضارع البسيط يُستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة والعادات.

وهو يتكون من:

.....+ inf.+ اسم جمع /l/ We/ You/ They

inf. + (s/es/ies) + اسم مفرد

• We clean our teeth every day.

• Sara helps her mother in the kitchen.

ويُنفى المضارع البسيط بـ:

Subject + don't/doesn't + inf.

ol don't like sweets.

Ola doesn't like fish.

2. The zero conditional:

الحالة الشرطية الصفرية.

Form التكوين

Form

التكوين

If/When

Present simple مضارع بسيط

Present simple

مضارع بسيط

Present simple مضارع بسيط

if/when

Present simple مضارع بسيط

We use the zero conditional to talk about things that are always true.

- نستخدم حالة الشرط الصفرية للتعبير عن حقائق علمية أو حياتية.

Usage

الاستخدام

- If it rains, we get water. = We get water if it rains.
- When it's late, I feel tired. = I feel tired when it's late.

حكا - عند وجود علامة من المضارع البسيط (often – usually – always) في جملة جواب الشرط يتم استخدام الحالة الصفرية.

• When I've got a test, I always revise well.

Language Exercises

	0 0		
1 Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. If you touch a je	llyfish, ityou		SB
a) sting	b) stings	c) stung	d)'s sting
2. When a stingray	a shark is co	oming, it jumps out o	f the water. SB
a) will know	b) know	c) knows	d) knew
3. When I have a te	est, I always	my lessons hard.	SB
a) revise	b) revised	c) will revise	d) revises
4. If a shark	a tooth, a new one	grows.	SB
a) loses	b) lost	c) will lose	d) lose
5. When a turtle is	in danger, it	into its shell.	SB
a) went	b) would go	c) go	d) goes
6. When we mix re	ed and yellow, we	orange.	
a) get	b) got	c) would get	d) gets
7. If I feel thirsty, I	always wate	er.	
a) will drink	b) drinks	c) drank	d) drink
8. I eat an apple v	vhen Ihungr	ry.	
a) was	b) will be	c) 'm	d) were
2 Read and corr	ect the underlined w	vords:	
1. The octopus sv	<u>vam</u> away fast when it	's in danger.	() SB
2. When I'm late f	or school, I always too	<u>k</u> a taxi.	()
3. If I <u>forgot</u> my p	en, I always ask my frie	end to lend me one.	()
4. If it is very hot,	I <u>turned</u> on the air-cor	nditioning.	()
F 16 don't food	d animals thou diad		전 [1] 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

6. If we heat water, did it boil?



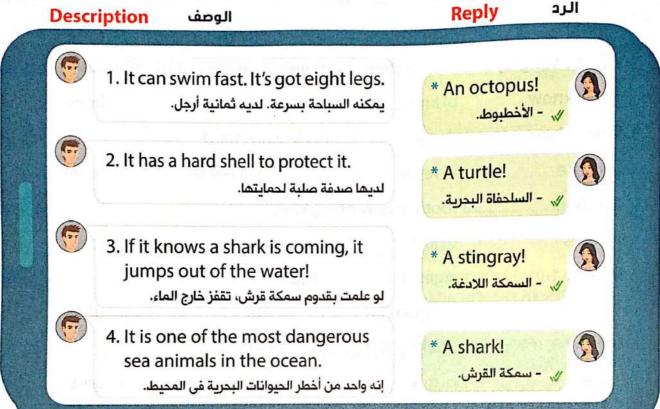
Speaking

Describing a sea animal

Guessing which animal it is:

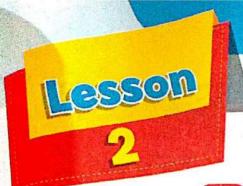
التخمين أى حيوان يكون هذا:

Reply



Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed: It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. Can you guess which one it is? : It is the (1)..... Tarek Ahmed: Yes, you are right. The second one is a big, flat fish and it lives in the ocean. : I think it is a (2)...... Tarek Ahmed: Wonderful! The next one is a sea animal which has a hard shell to protect it. : It is a (3)...... Ahmed: Fantastic! It is your turn to (4)..... : OK. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs. Tarek Ahmed: I think it is an (5)..... Tarek : Great! You are right.



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		ä	فردات الرئيسي	الم	1 miles (#C 171)
environment	البيئة	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع	sea life	الحياة البحرية
save (d)	ينقذ	fisherman	صياد السمك	planet	كوكب
throw away	يرمى	rubbish	قمامة		有 II yan

Additional \	Vocabulary	Ğ	دات الإضافيا	المفر	
plastic	بلاستيك	sea bird	طائر البحر	the sports centre	مركز رياضى
everywhere	فی کل مکان	shopping bag	حقيبة للتسوق	beach	شاطئ
somewhere	فی مکان ما	describe (d)	يصف	way	طريق / طريقة
problem	مشكلة	materials	مواد خام		

Langua	age Expressions	ā	ء اللغوي	التعتال	
take	a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلًا	write	▶ a text	يكتب نصًا
stay	▶ in the environ	يظل في البيئة ment	more	▶ than once	لأكثر من مرة
recycle	▶ plastic	يعيد تصنيع البلاستيك	walk	in the mountains	يتجول في الجبال

Prepositions			وف الجر	ط)	
use for	يستخدم ك	stay in	يبقى في	on beach	على الشاطئ
most of	معظم	for example	على سبيل المثال	die from	يموت بسبب
get rid of	يتخلص من	try to	يحاول أن	dangerous for	خطير على
clean from	ينظف من	throw into	يلقى فى	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
take off	يخلع	walk on	يمشى على	a view of	منظر لـ



Speaking

وصف حیوان بحری Describing a sea animal

التخمين أي حيوان يكون هذا: Guessing which animal it is: الرد Reply Description الوصف 1. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs. * An octopus! يمكنه السباحة بسرعة. لديه ثمانية أرجل. الأخطبوط. 2. It has a hard shell to protect it. * A turtle! لديها صدفة صلبة لحمائتها. - السلحفاة البحرية. 3. If it knows a shark is coming, it * A stingray! jumps out of the water! - السمكة اللادغة. لو علمت بقدوم سمكة قرش، تقفز خارج الماء. 4. It is one of the most dangerous * A shark!

Speaking Exercises

" - سمكة القرش.

sea animals in the ocean.

إنه واحد من أخطر الحيوانات البحرية في المحيط.

Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed: It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. Can you guess which one it is? : It is the (1)..... Tarek Ahmed: Yes, you are right. The second one is a big, flat fish and it lives in the ocean. : I think it is a (2)..... Tarek Ahmed: Wonderful! The next one is a sea animal which has a hard shell to protect it. : It is a (3)...... Tarek Ahmed: Fantastic! It is your turn to (4)...... me. : OK. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs. Tarek Ahmed: I think it is an (5)..... : Great! You are right. Tarek



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		ā	فردات الرئيسي	الم	15/24 Y 1/10
environment	البيئة	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع	sea life	الحياة البحرية
save (d)	ينقذ	fisherman	صياد السمك	planet	كوكب
throw away	يرمى	rubbish	قمامة		Blaken

Additional	Vocabulary	ć	دات الإضافية	المفر	
plastic	بلاستيك	sea bird	طائر البحر	the sports centre	مرکز ریاضی
everywhere	فی کل مکان	shopping bag	حقيبة للتسوق	beach	شاطئ
somewhere	فی مکان ما	describe (d)	يصف	way	طريق / طريقة
problem	مشكلة	materials	مواد خام	1.578 2.7	

Langu	age Expressions	a de la companya de	ه اللغويا	ghrann)	
take	a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلًا	write	▶ a text	يكتب نصًا
stay	in the environ	يظل في البيئة ment	more	▶ than once	لأكثر من مرة
recycle	▶ plastic	يعيد تصنيع البلاستيك	walk	▶ in the mountains	يتجول في الجبال

Prepositions		e ea	وف الجر	<u></u>	174
use for	يستخدم لــ	stay in	يبقى في	on beach	على الشاطئ
most of	معظم	for example	على سبيل المثال	die from	يموت بسبب
get rid of	يتخلص من	try to	يحاول أن	dangerous for	خطیر علی
clean from	ينظف من	throw into	يلقى فى	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
take off	يخلع	walk on	يمشى على	a view of	منظر لـ



And the second s	The state of the s
	صريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
Cullingations of michain verso	

Pre	sent	Past simple	Past participle
find	يجد	found	found
mean	يعنى/ يقصد	meant	meant

Definitions		التعريفات	
throw away	يرمى	put something you do not need somewhere.	
planet	كوكب	two words to describe where we live.	
environment	البيئة	two words to describe where we live.	
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	a verb which means use again.	
rubbish	قمامة	things we do not need, like old paper.	

Language Notes

• We mustn't stop helping our planet.

stop + (to + inf.)

• We must stop to buy food. We are very hungry.

die from

• She died from a heart attack.

die out

All dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Ali stopped because of the doctor's advice.
- a) to smoke b) smoking c) smoked d) smoke
- 2. Her husband died a serious disease.
- a) from b) out c) because d) at

Write it right

How to write about keeping our environment clean کیفیة الکتابة عن الحفاظ علی نظافة البیئة

- It is very important to look after our environment.
- We must keep it clean.
- We must (الأشياء التي ينبغي فعلما)
- We mustn't (الأشياء التي لا ينبغي فعلما)
- We should try to recycle old things.
- We should teach our children how to keep it clean and healthy.

Writing tips

Make sure you are writing in the right tense. The prompt will guide you.

تأكد من استخدام الزمن المناسب في الكتابة. (تعرف عليه من خلال العنوان).

Example

The environment

It's important to live a healthy life. The environment is the place where we all live. We must keep it clean to be healthy. When plastic stays in the environment, there is a big problem. Some of the plastic is about 100 years old! Every year, many sea animals die from plastic. We must try to use other materials like paper and glass. We must use our shopping bags more than once. We mustn't throw them away. We mustn't stop trying to find ways to help our planet. We must keep our planet clean. We must save it!

w, your turn:	ورك الآن:	حان د
	"Our planet"	7
We must keep our	planet clean.	um
		A LANGE



Reading



Pre-reading question:

- What happens to most of the plastic we use?

3. Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 46

We must save our planet!

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment⁽¹⁾ for a very long time.



- البيئة (1)
- يعيد تصنيع (2)
- رمي (3)
- قمامة (4)
- كوكب (5)

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle (2) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. We must try to use other materials – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away (3) these bags in rivers.



It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish (4) from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet (5)!

Post-reading question:

- Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?

Vocabulary Exercises

	odial y E	xercises			
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1. Earth is one of eight that go around the sun.					
a) planes	b) plans	c) plants	d) planets		
2. "" is a ve	rb which means use	again.	SB SB		
a) Recycle	b) Grow	c) Throw	d) Sting		
3. Things which we do	on't need like old pa	per are called	SB SB		
a) materials	b) rubbish	c) tails	d) shells		
4. We mustn't old things away. We can recycle them.					
a) collect	b) touch	c) throw	d) sting		
5. We need a type of	5. We need a type of fuel that won't pollute the				
a) environment	b) ocean	c) rubbish	d) whale		
6. We should all our old paper and clothes.					
a) throw	b) burn	c) clean	d) recycle		
7. Plastic is when animals eat it.					
a) good	b) healthy	c) useful	d) poisonous		
8. Most of the plastic goes the ocean.					
a) out	b) into	c) with	d) by		
9. Crossing roads is for old people. We should help them.					
a) dangerous	b) flat	c) poisonous	d) easy		
10. Every year, more t	:han 100, 000 sea ani	mals and birds die	plastic.		
a) from	b) for	c) in	d) out		
11. How long will it to	ake to clean the rubb	oishoceans	and beaches? 🌘		
a) for	b) from	c) at	d) by		
12 It took	time to reach the s	tation because of the	hoavy traffic		

b) a short

c) a long

a) along

d) short



Language

must/mustn't - should/shouldn't

الزام Obligation

must + inf.

يجب أن

mustn't + inf.

يجب ألا

We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do.

- تستخدم (must) بمعنى «يجب أن» للتعبير عن الأشياء التى من الضرورى أن تحدث.
- •We must save our planet.
- You must help your mother at home.
- You must study your lessons hard.

We use (mustn't) to talk about things that are necessary not to do.

- تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى «يجب ألا» للتعبير عن الأشياء التى من الضروري ألا تحدث.
- We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.
- You mustn't talk in the library.

نصيحة Advice

should + inf

يجب أن

shouldn't + inf

بحب ألا

We use (should) to talk about things that are a good idea to do.

- نستخدم (should) للحديث عن الأشياء التي يكون فعلها فكرة جيدة.

• We should recycle more.

We use (shouldn't) to talk about things that are a good idea not to do.

- نستخدم (shouldn't) للحديث عن الأشياء التي يكون فعلها فكرة غير جيدة.

We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

۱ - استخدام (must) يعطى المعنى أكثر قوة من استخدام (should):

لاحظ:

• You must wear your school uniform.

111

(الزام)

• You should get up early.

1

(نصيحة)

٢- تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام بينما تستخدم (shouldn't) للتعبير عن النصيحة.

- You mustn't cross the road when the traffic light is red. 🗸 🗸 (الزام)
- You shouldn't sleep late on a school night.

(20.00)

Language Exercises

1	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:		
1	1. You play games in the road.				
		b) mustn't	c) would	d) wouldn't	
2	. When you cross a ro	oad, first you	find a safe place to c	ross. WB	
	a) haven't	b) have	c) mustn't	d) must	
3	3. When you cross a road, youlook left and right.				
	a) must	b) are	c) aren't	d) mustn't	
4	. People sm	noke in hospitals.			
	a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) have	
5	. She should	her younger brother	to eat.		
	a) help	b) helps	c) helping	d) helped	
6	. We revise	well for our exams.			
	a) won't	b) should	c) have	d) mustn't	
7	. At school, you	talk to your frienc	ls during the lesson.		
	a) must	b) can	c) mustn't	d) should	
8	8. Igo to the hospital. I'm very ill.				
	a) must	b) mustn't	c) shouldn't	d) won't	
9. You be careful when you use the knife.					
	a) mustn't	b) can't	c) must	d) won't	
2	Read and correct t	the underlined words	· say y into you write-		
1. You mustn't look after your health. (()		
2. You should studying your lessons hard.			()		
3. We should watch TV before doing our homework.			()		
4. You can drink water from the river. It isn't clean. (()	
5. You <u>must</u> look at the sun without sunglasses. (()		
6. Should we to clean our beaches?			()		





What must/ mustn't you do in/ on the classroom/ the sports centre/ roads?

ما يجب وما لا يجب فعله في الفصل/ النادي الرياضي/ الطرق...؟

We mustn't play games on roads.

يجب ألا نلعب على الطرق.

We must play games in the sports centres.

يجب أن نلعب في النوادي الرياضية.

We must be quiet in the classroom.

يجب أن نهدأ في الفصل.

Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem : Do you know what we mustn't do on roads?

Nader : Of course, we mustn't (1)...... games on roads.

It is very dangerous.

Hatem : And what must we do while crossing the roads?

Nader : We (2)......look right and left before crossing.

Hatem : And what (3)..... we do in the classroom?

Nader: We must listen carefully to our teachers.

Hatem : And what mustn't we do in the classroom?

Nader: We mustn't (4)...... noise during the lessons.

Hatem: Finally, can I ask you what we must do in the sports centre?

Nader : We must (5)..... exercises to keep fit.

Lessons 1&2

General Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:					
	mplete the following dialogue:				
	: Excuse me, can I ask you some questions, Mr Waleed?				
Mr Waleed : Sure. \	: Sure. What would you like to ask?				
Nora :(1)	:(1)is there a lot of plastic in the environment?				
Mr Waleed: Becau	: Because plastic stays in the environment (2) a long time.				
	: What happens to most of the plastic we use?				
Mr Waleed : Most	leed: Most of it (3) into the ocean.				
Nora : Which	(4)				
	Mr Waleed: Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.				
	in the reguelo than plastic?				
Mr Waleed : Paper					
m valeta v ape.					
2 Choose the corr	ect answer from a	, b, c or d:	medical manage of the		
	1. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can them.				
a) make	b) recycle	c) boil	d) put		
2. Trees are very go	od for our	because they give	us clean air. WB		
a) environment	212 4	c) space	d) street		
3 We don't need th	3. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the				
a) plant	b) rubbish	c) plastic	d) space		
4. The turtle put its head into its					
a) plastic	b) bin	c) tail	d) shell		
5. His wife diedcancer.					
a) as	b) for	c) from	d) out		
6. Tois to get rid of what you do not need.					
a) hear about	b) listen to	c) turn to	d) throw away		

Unit 7			
7. Ast	tung my hand while sv	vimming in the sea.	
a) shark	b) whale	c) turtle	d) jellyfish
8. You	. swim here. It is very o	langerous.	
a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) can
9. When you leav	e ice in the sun, it	water.	
a) become	b) becomes	c) would become	d) became
10. If you	plants, they don't g	row.	
a) water	b) watered	c) don't water	d) doesn't water
Read and corr	ect the underlined w	ords:	
1. You must to take water when you go to the desert.			()
2. You must eat too many sweets. It is bad for you.			
3. When a seed g	et water and light, it g	rows into a healthy plan	t. (
4. I walk to schoo	l if the bus <u>didn't</u> arriv	e.	(
Write a paragi	raph of Eighty (80) w	ords on:	
700		e our planet"	
		species (1)	
	. w.coongr7 s		espera la seria perside
	H*	-96-12	*******
		and a street	
	TELL.		
••••			
E. 100			- T (4)



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية			
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	frighten	يخيف	soil	تربة
seed	بذرة	air	هواء	healthy	صحی
project	مشروع	picnic	نزهة خلوية		

Additional Vocabulary			دات الإضافية	المفر
warm	دافئ	stone	حجر	ground رض
careful	حريص	pot	إناء	trash
water (ed)	یروی	own	خاص	food مطعام
share (d)	يشارك	idea	فكرة	rules

Langua	ge Expressions	á	ے اللعویا	التعتال ——	
	noise	يصدر ضوضاء	keep	air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء صحيًا
something a hole a phone call a sandwich	يصنع شيئًا	take	▶ turns	يتبادل الأدوار	
		يحفر حفرة	do	▶ activity	يؤدى نشاطًا
		يقوم باتصال هاتفي	play	a sport / game	يلعب رياضة/لعبة
		يعد ساندوتشًا	throw	▶ trash	يرمى القمامة

Prepositions			وف الجر	حر	
share with	يشارك مع	angry with	غاضب من	walk into	يصطدم بـ
at the bottom of	في قاع	fill with	يملا بـ	agree with	يتفق مع
cover with	یغطی بــ	bad for	ضار ب	press into	يضغط على



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs عير المنتظمة				
Presen	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN	Past simple	Past participle	
leave	يغادر	left	left	
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten	
grow	ينمو	grew	grown	
throw	یرمی	threw	thrown	

	Language Notes	F) a · · · ·
	help (inf. / to + inf.)	يساعد
1	 Do you want to help save our planet? I helped Ali to do his homework. 	r e lle , sor ludassor
	too much + (uncountable noun :اسم لايعد)	کثیر جدا
2	• Don't give the plant too much water. too many + (countable noun :اسم یعد)	ڪثير جدا
	• Too many students are absent today.	

Check Point -

	1116		
Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, o	or d:	
1. I help my mother	the kitchen.		
a) to clean	b) cleans	c) cleaning	d) cleaned
2. Nora put too	sugar in my cup	of tea.	
a) many	b) much	c) a lot of	d) few
3. There are	. people on that bus, I	'll take the next o	one.
a) too many	b) too much	c) much	d) few



How to write about recycling. كيفية الكتابة عن إعادة التصنيع.

- Materials have many different uses.
- Recycling materials is very important for us.
- We can recycle (المادة) to make (شئ جديد).
- Recycling is important because (السبب).
- We mustn't throw old things.
- We mustn't stop recycling old materials because this is very useful for us.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

Example

How to make something from recycled plastic

Materials have many different uses. Recycling materials is very important for us. We must find a new use for old plastic. We can make pots to feed birds from old bottles. We can make kitchen containers. We can make plastic pencil cases, too. There are many good ideas for recycling plastic. We mustn't throw it away. A lot of animals and birds die from poisonous plastic in the sea and on land. We mustn't stop trying to use old materials because this is very useful for us.

Now, your turn		"Recycling"	نان دورك الآن:
BANKS BY LALLY STATE OF THE STA	als have many di		
	S. Charles and the second		





Pre-listening question: - What's a nature reserve?

2. Listen to a talk by a teacher and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 48



Teacher: We're going to visit this nature reserve(1) today.

We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here, so we must be careful what we do.

First, you mustn't make a lot of noise! You'll frighten⁽²⁾ the animals and birds. Secondly, we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals

not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you?

Now, I know we're going to have a picnic⁽³⁾ lunch later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Next, you must take all your rubbish⁽⁴⁾ with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them. Finally, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project⁽⁵⁾.

Post-listening question:

- Why mustn't you give any food to the animals or birds in the nature reserve?

يخيف (2)

نزهة (3)

مشروع (5)

Reading

Pre-reading questions:

- 1. Why do people go diving in the coral reefs?
- 2. How much must you pay to dive?

1. Complete the text with must or mustn't.

WB page 102



Ras Mohammed reserve⁽¹⁾ is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs⁽²⁾ here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you **must** pay around L.E.100.

محمية (1)

شعاب مرجانية (2)

صنارات الصيد (3)

حريص (4)

When you dive, you **mustn't** touch or give food to any of the fish.

You **must** only use knives to cut fishing lines (3) and you **must** never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you **must** be careful (4)!

Post-reading question:

- Are you interested in going to Ras Mohammed reserve? Why?



Reading



Pre-reading question:

- Can you plant a tree?

1. Quickly read the instructions. Circle the things you need to plant a tree.

SB page 50

هواء (1)

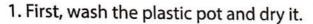
- صحی (2)
- بنرة (3)
- إناء (4)
- التربة (5)
- ارض (6)

Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet?

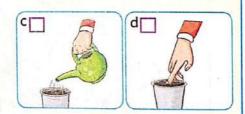
Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air (1)

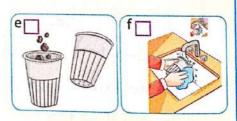
healthy (2). You can plant a nut or the seed (3) of
a fruit.

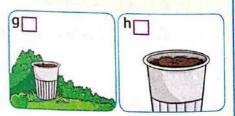


- 2. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot (4).
- 3. Then, fill the pot with soil (5).
- 4. Next, press your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.
- 5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
- 6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
- Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water.)
- 8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground (6).









Post-reading question:

- Why should we plant more trees?

بدرة (1)

فارغ (2)

تربة (3)

يضغط (4)

فتحة / ثقب (5)

Listening

Pre-listening question: - How can we help save our planet?

2. Read the instructions again and match them to the pictures. Then listen and check your answers.

SB page 50

Adult: Do you want to help save our planet? Well, plant a tree!

Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or
the seed (1) of a fruit.

Child: What should I do first?

Adult: First, wash an empty⁽²⁾ plastic pot and dry it. Secondly, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.

Child: Then, what should I do?

Adult: Then, fill the pot with soil (3).

Child : Like this?

Adult: Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press (4) your finger into the soil and make a small hole (5).

Child : How deep must it be?

Adult: It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child: Should I water it now?

Adult: Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say 'I planted that!'

Post-listening question:

- How can you plant a tree?





Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or a:	
1. Ais an	empty space in some	ething.	WB
a) whole	b) hull	c) hole	d) hall
2. Tois to put	something over some	ething else to prote	ect or hide it. WB
a) build	b) cover	c) cycle	d) recycle
3. A is a	small, hard thing m	ade by plants, wh	ich grows into nev
plants.	3		WB
a) sand	b) seed	c) soil	d) sail
4. Ais an	area of land in which	animals and plant	s are protected.
a) nature reserve	b) rubbish bin	c) ground	d) soil
5. It's not funny to	children. Yo	ou are hurting their	feelings.
a) plant	b) kill	c) wash	d) frighten
6. Theis	the place where plan	ts grow.	
a) air	b) stone	c) soil	d) gym
7. He decided to put	a plant into a	filled with soil	
a) pot	b) sandwich	c) seed	d) stone
8. She began to	a hole for the	plant.	
a) give	b) keep	c) take	d) make
9. Trees help us to	our air hea	lthy.	
a) take	b) keep	c) do	d) have
10. We should	our garden daily	<i>/</i> .	
a) save	b) wash	c) water	d) frighten
11. Menna	her hands after was	hing them.	
a) saved	b) left	c) watered	d) dried
12. This bowl is filled	soup, so i	t's hot.	
a) for	b) at	c) with	d) by



Asking and giving instructions طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Asking for instructions طلب التعليمات	Giving instructions إعطاء التعليمات
 1. (What should I do to + inf?) • What should I do to plant a tree? • What should I do to make a phone call? • What should I do to make a sandwich? • What should I do to make something from recycled plastic? • What should I do to play a sport or game? 	- First,
2. Should I (water it now)?	- Yes, you should./No, don't (give it too much water)

Speaking Exercises

-		And the state of t	
	Complete	the following	dialogue
Chille	Complete	the lonowing	ulaluque.

	are the following share great
Lama	: I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?
Mariam	: (1), find a sunny place in the garden.
Lama	: Like this?
Mariam	: Yes, that's right. Second, the ground (2) not
	have many stones in it.
Lama	: OK. What should I do after that?
Mariam	:Then, make a small (3) in the ground.
Lama	: How deep must it be?
Mariam	: About 2 cm. Next, put (4) water in the hole
	so it is not too dry.
Lama	: Should I water it now?
Mariam	: Yes, you should. (5), put the seed in the
	hole and cover it with soil.



Life Skills

Working together = التعاون Collaboration

When you collaborate with others, you work as a group to do something.

.عندما تتعاون مع الأخرين، فإنكم تعملون معًا لفعل شىء ما

1 Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

اختر الكلمات الصحيحة لاستكمال القواعد.



When you work together, ...

- 1. You mustn't forget why you are doing the activity.
- 2. You must listen to other students' ideas.
- 3. You should share your ideas with others.
- 4. You shouldn't make all the decisions or rules yourself.
- 5. You must take turns.
- 6. You mustn't be angry with people you don't agree with.
- 2 Work in pairs. Think of two more rules for working together.

اعملوا في ثنائيات. فكروا في قاعدتين إضافيتين للعمل معًا.

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from	m a, b, c or d: (الكتاب	(نص الاستماع في نهاية
1. I go to the beach in		
a) summer b) winter	c) spring	d) fall
2. I go there with	The state of the s	MELE
a) my friends b) my school	c) my parents	d) my family
3. When a wave comes, Iup.		
a) jump b) throw	c) run	d) fill
4. On the beach, I like to play with my beach .		
a) bag b) ball	c) bike	d) car
2 Read the following, then answer the que	stions:	
A nature reserve is an area of land in which	h animals and plan	ts are protected.
Nature reserves may be built by the government	nent in some countr	ries, or by private
landowners.		
There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which	ch cover 12% of Egy	ptian land. Those
nature reserves were built to protect the Eg	gyptian nature. Egy	pt announced a
plan to build 40 nature reserves from 1997	to 2017, to help pro	otect the natural
resources and the culture and history of thos	e areas. The largest	nature reserve in
Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometre	es) in the southeast	, on the Red Sea
coast.		
A) Answer the following questions:		
1. What's the passage about?		
2. What is a nature reserve?		
3. Why do you think Egypt planned to build	more nature reserv	es?
B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	l:	
4. Who can build nature reserves around the	world?	
a) Governments. b) Private landowners.	c) Universities.	d) Both a and b.
5. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is		
a) on the Nile	b) on the Red S	
c) on the Mediterranean coast	d) on the ocean	
6. Nature reserves cover about of		
a) 10% b) 20%	c) 25%	d) 12%



3 Choose the corre	ct answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1 There are 30	in Egypt. They a	are the places where	animals are protected
a) malls	b) seeds	c) stations	a) Hatare reserves
2. Be and	look left and right	when you cross the	road.
a) quiet	b) polite	c) careful	a) dangerous
3. My mother	a telephone c	all to ask about her f	friend.
a) made	b) stayed		d) took
4. I went to the sport	ts centre to	a game.	
a) make	b) buy	c) give	d) play
5. Ali him	self with a blanket	because it was cold	
a) saved	b) grew	c) covered	d) pressed
6. My mother was ar	ngry me	because I broke the	glass.
a) at	b) for	c) by	d) with
7. I my lu	nch with my friend	because he was hui	
a) shared	b) agree		d) filled
8. If I see rubbish on	the ground, I alwa	ys it in th	
	b) throw		d) throwing
9. You stu			The state of the s
	b) must		d) can't
10. We should always			
a) welcome	b) welcomes	c) welcomed	d) welcoming
Read and correct	the underlined w	vords:	
1. You must spend a	lot of time watching	ng TV. It's a waste of	time. (
2. It is raining outsid			(
3. If I felt ill, I always			(
4. When we cool wat		ice.	(
Write a paragrap	h of Eighty (80) w	ords on:	
Companie de la la la		rve you visited"	
······			



SB pages 51, 52 WB pages 104, 105

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	المفردات الرئيسية		
skeleton	هیکل عظمی	worried	قلق
respect (ed)	يحترم	headphones	سماعات الرأس
brave	شجاع	fishing line	صنارة الصيد
gloves	قفازات		as notes gri

Additional Vo	cabulary	، الإضافية	المفردات		
strong	قوى	main	رئيسى	boat	قارب
newspaper	جريدة	local	محلي	poster	ملصق إعلاني
use (d) (V/N)	يستخدم/استخدام	radio station	محطة إذاعية	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
rubbish bags	أكياس قمامة	event	حدث هام	group	مجموعة

Langua	age Expressions	ā	يرات اللغويا	เเจาไป	- 1 524
	worried	يشعر بالقلق	make >	art with	يصنع عملًا فنيًا بــ
feel >	weak	يشعر بالضعف	more >	than ever	أكثر مما سبق
catch >	fish	يصطاد سمكًا	o Assaula	s form house	

Prepositions			وف الجر		
pull to/onto	يجذب لــ	up to	حتى	dangerous for	خطير على
return to		a piece of	قطعة من	a bottle of	زجاجة من

Conjugations of Irregula	Past participle	
Present یشعر feel	Past simple felt	felt
catch يصطاد	caught	caught
sleep منام	slept	slept

Language Notes

stronger than

أقوى من (للمقارنة بين اثنين)

تصريف الأفعال غير

The fish was stronger than Santiago.

the strongest

الأقوى (للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة)

Ali is the strongest boy in the class.

lt (takes / took) + (مدة زمنية) + to + inf.

تستفرق / استفرقت

It took two days to pull it to the boat.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Ramy is than his friend Kareem.
 - a) strong
- b) stronger
- c) strongest
- d) the strongest
- 2. It ten minutes to reach work. It is very near.
 - a) takes
- b) makes
- c) gives
- d) does

- 3. The blue whale is the sea animal.
 - a) big
- b) bigger
- c) as big
- d) biggest

Write it right

How to write about a story you like. گيفية الكتابة عن قصة تحبها.

- Reading is a very useful hobby.
- I like reading short stories.
- My favourite story is (اسم القصة).
- It's by (اسم الكاتب).
- It's about (فكرة القصة).
- -The main character is (اسم الشخصية).
- It teaches us (الدرس المستفاد).

Writing tips

The concluding sentence wraps up the ideas presented in the paragraph.

الجملة الختامية تلخص الأفكار المقدمة في الفقرة.

Example

"A book I like"

Reading is a very useful hobby. I like reading stories. My favourite story is Robinson Crusoe. It's by Daniel Defoe. It's about a sailor who lived on an island alone for many years because his ship sank into the sea. The main character is Robinson Crusoe who made a home on the island. He planted wheat and made his food. He made a boat and could catch a lot of fish to eat. He caught goats and made cheese from their milk. He could make his clothes. The story teaches us to depend on ourselves.

, your turn:		عان دورك الآن:
	"Your favourite story"	THE PARTY OF THE P
		A STATE OF THE PARTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY



Reading



Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite story?

2. Read the story quickly and put the pictures in the correct order.

SB page 51

- صیاد (1)
- قلق (2)
- صنارة الصيد (3)
- هیکل عظمی (4)
- شجاع (5)
- يحترم (6)

The Old Man and the Sea

by Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman⁽¹⁾. He felt worried⁽²⁾ because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line⁽³⁾. But the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks came. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton⁽⁴⁾. He felt weak and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave⁽⁵⁾ to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected⁽⁶⁾ him more than ever.







Post-reading questions:

- 1. How did Santiago feel when he didn't catch any fish for 84 days?
- 2. What do you learn from the story?



Reading

pre-reading question: - What's the leaflet about?

قفازات (1)

- Read the leaflet. Write the headings in the correct places.
- سماعات الرأس (2)

SB page 52

We must clean our beach!

1. Where and when is the event?

- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. 5 p.m.

2. What do we need?

- Rubbish bags, gloves⁽¹⁾ (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks to eat!
- Some people like listening to music on their headphones⁽²⁾!



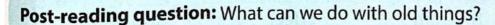
- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach.
- One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4. How can we tell people about our event?

- Posters (around school and town).
- Emails to local groups.
- Local radio station or newspaper.

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- Recycle it
- Find a new use for it.
- Make art with it.





Life Skills

Remember that we all have a role to play in helping the environment. Give yourself clear goals on how to do this.



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, o	or d:	la alida/table
1. Ahmed lost his pl	none, so his mother w	vas wi	nen ne alan't phone
her.			WB
a) happy	b) worried	c) glad	d) safe
2. Judy felt very	after she was	ill, but she is bette	r now. WB
a) friendly	b) strong	c) weak	d) Kina
3. People catch fish	with fishing		SB
a) ropes	b) skeletons	c) lines	d) rows
4. When Santiago re	eturned to his home o	n the beach, he had	d no fish, only
a a) skeleton	b) glove	c) rubbish bag	d) headphone
5. A/An	is someone who cate	thes fish as a job.	
a) soldier	b) officer	c) journalist	d) fisherman
6. Santiago is the n	nainin the	e story.	41 Table 11
a) singer	b) skeleton	c) character	d) octopus
7. He is a great tead	cher. All students	him.	
a) save	b) respect	c) feel	d) catch
8 My father	home late, beca	use he had an imp	ortant meeting.
a) felt	b) caught	c) returned	d) gave
9 She	worried when she sav	w her father at scho	ol.
a) felt	b) made	c) gave	d) did
THE WASHINGTON	the fish to	the boat after two	days.
a) save	b) return	c) feel	d) pull
11. We can tell peop	ole about our event by	[,] making	
a) posters	b) headphones		d) snacks
12. Ai	s a small amount of fo	od that is eaten be	etween main meals or
instead of a mea	al.		
a) skeleton	b) radio station	c) snack	d) rubbish bag

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

	1 Complete the following dialogue:	
	Donia: Hello, Ghada. How are you?	
	Ghada: I'm fine, Donia. What about you?	
	Donia: I'm fine, too. Do you (1)	reading stories?
	Ghada: Yes, I do.	
	Donia: Which (2)	did you read?
	Ghada: I read The Old Man and the (3)	Stantis I
	Donia: What's it about?	
	Ghada: It's about a (4)	who caught a big fish.
	Donia: Did you enjoy it?	
	Ghada: Yes, I (5)	
(2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c o	or d:
	1. They used to keep their hands	clean.
) posters d) headphones
	2. Ali uses to listen to music.	
	u) poster-) headphones d) rubbish bags
	3. He is very because he saved a	girl from death.
	a) stupid b) brave) calm d) careful
	4. I listened to fantastic radio	
	a) posters b) gloves c)) headphones d) stations
	5. I saw the new of Tamer Hosney	y in the street.
) station d) headphone

Unit 7			
6. I want a piece	cake plea	se, mum.	d) in
a) at	b) off	c) of	u) III
7. We all respect	her more than		n is a second dis
a) never	b) ever	c) after	d) if
8 When you	away plastic,	it stays in the enviror	ment for years. SB
a) throw	b) throws	c) threw	d) throwing
	ol if the bus doesn't	, to 100 30	SB
a) arrived	b) arriving	c) arrive	d) arrives
10. You	sleep early to get up	early.	
a) should	b) mustn't	c) shouldn't	d) won't
 You shouldn't s If people eat to 	es when it <u>was</u> cold. Study hard. So much, they <u>got</u> fat Careful while crossin		() () ()
4. fou <u>mustire</u> be	Careful Willie Cross.	and the substitute of the	
Write a paragra	aph of Eighty (80) v	vords on:	SB
node non		our beaches"	russicio s
	71 F		40.0
		- 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
			53446 u.h. saga 1.5

Videoscript >

SB page 49

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat⁽¹⁾, or caracal⁽²⁾ ... to the Nile crocodile⁽³⁾, there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction⁽⁴⁾. This means that every example of the animal will die⁽⁵⁾. The Dorcas gazelle⁽⁶⁾ lives in the Sinai Peninsula⁽⁷⁾ and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep⁽⁸⁾ lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern and western Egypt.

The striped hyena⁽⁹⁾ looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

No.		or sin
(1)	الصحراوي	لقط

121	- A . II
(Z)	الوشق

التمساح (3)

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong⁽¹⁰⁾. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution⁽¹¹⁾ in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations⁽¹²⁾ that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

التلوث (11)

منظمات (12)



Vocabulary

Vocabulary		فردات اللغوية	الم	
اليابسة land	ocean	محيط	danger	خطر
يحمى protect	poisonous	سام	sting	يلدغ
environment البيئة	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع	مید fishing line	صنارة
save ينقذ	fisherman	صياد	sea life البحرية	الحياة
throw away	rubbish	قمامة	planet	كوكب
nature reserve محمية طبيعية	frighten (ed)	يخيف	soil	تربة
seed بذرة	air	هواء	healthy	صحی
skeleton هیکل عظمی	brave	شجاع	worried	قلق
respect (ed) يحترم	gloves	قفازات	ت الرأس headphones	سماعا
Sea an	imals	بحرية	د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د	
coral reefs الشعب المرجانية	shark	سمكة القرش	whale	حوت
jellyfish قنديل البحر	stingray	السمكة اللادغة	ط octopus	أخطبو
turtle سلحفاة بحرية	A, II. 1-1117 mark	12 10 17 19 10	e e le el engle Hadan	Ž.

On land and sea



If- Zero conditional

الحالة الصفرية من الجمل الشرطية

of we heat water, it evaporates.

When I feel tired, I go to bed.

- تستخدم مع الحقائق الثابتة والعادات:

must / mustn't

should / shouldn't

الزام Obligation

must + inf.

mustn't + inf.

- We must save our planet.

- We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.

Advice نصيحة

should + inf.

shouldn't + inf.

- We should recycle more materials.

- We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

Speaking

وصف حیوان بحری Describing a sea animal

Description

الوصف

Reply



1. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs.

* An octopus! 🧳 🦠





2. It has a hard shell to protect it.

* A turtle!



Asking and giving instructions طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Asking for instructions

Giving instructions

طلب التعليمات

اعطاء التعليمات

1. What should I do first/next/after that?

- First, Second, Then, Next, Finally,

2. Should I (water it now)?

- Yes, you should./No, don't (give it too much water)

Test

based on Unit 11

			ALTERIAL LINE DOLLER.
1 Listen and choose th	ne correct answ	er from a, b, c or d: ((نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
1. Tourists like the beau	ıtiful	in Egypt.	
a) beaches	b) gardens	c) parks	d) cinemas
2. The beaches in	are fant	tastic.	
a) Aswan	b) Luxor	c) Hurghada	d) Giza
3. We should keep our l	beaches		
a) clean	b) clear	c) dirty	d) ugly
4. When do tourists like	to visit Egypt?		
a) In winter.	b) In fall.	c) In spring.	d) In summer.
2 Complete the follow			
Dina: I want to make	a nice salad.		
Hala: That's easy. I can	n teach you.		
Dina: Really! What sho	ould I do to mak	e a salad?	
Hala: To make a nice	salad, (1)	, was	h the tomatoes and
cucumbers.			
Dina: OK, I've done th	at. What do I do	(2)	?
Hala: Next, peel off th	ne onion skin. A	fter (3)	, cut the onions
carefully.			
Dina : Like (4)		?	
Hala: Yes. That's right.	(5)	, cut the toma	toes and cucumbers.
Dina: That's easy!			

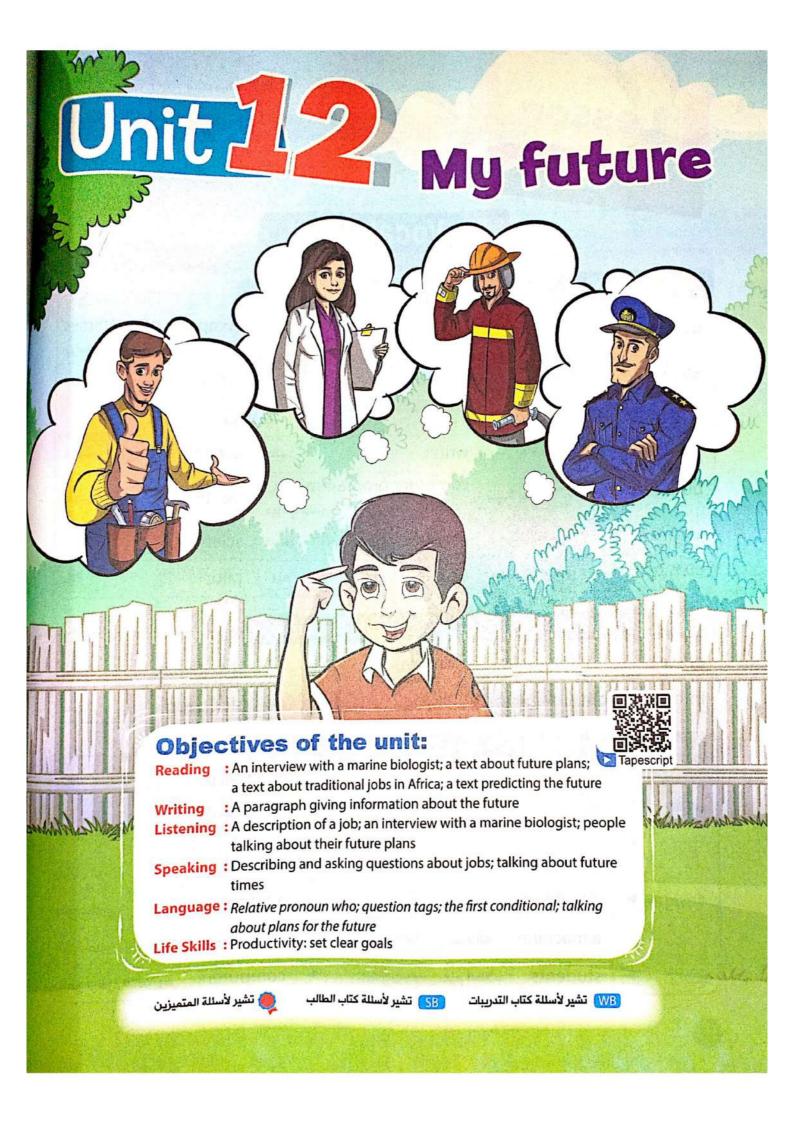
Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, my wife saw a mouse running across her kitchen floor. She was afraid of mice, so she ran out of the house, got on a bus and went down to the shops. She bought a mouse-trap. The shopkeeper said to her, "Put some cheese in it and you will soon catch that mouse". She went home. She looked at the fridge, but she couldn't find any cheese in it. She cut a picture of some cheese out of a magazine and put that in the trap. The picture of the cheese was quite successful! When she came down to the kitchen the next morning, there was a picture of a mouse in the trap beside the picture of the cheese!

Carrie do Till to the		J ,	
trap beside the pic	cture of the cheese!		
A) Answer the follow	ving questions:		
1. What did the lac	dy buy to catch the mo	use?	
2. Where did the la	ady see the mouse?		
3. What does the t	underlined word "it" refe	er to?	
	ct answer from a, b, c		
4. Mice like eating			la de la constanta de la const
a) pictures	b) magazines	c) traps	d) cheese
5. The lady	the mouse.		0 -
a) caught	b) didn't catch	c) killed	d) ate
6. The story is			d)
a) successful	b) funny	c) sad	d) scary
4 Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. A/An	has got eight legs to	o help it!	
a) stingray	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) octopus
2. He	out of the water as it v	vas very hot.	
a) left	b) felt	c) jumped	d) made
3. The thief	the man with a	big stick and escap	ed.
a) hit	b) stung	c) protected	d) poisoned



4 We should	old things to sa	ave our environn	nent.
a) send	b) recycle	c) eat	d) plant
5 Last week we v	isited a to		rotect animals.
a) poster	b) radio station	c) pot	d) nature reserve
6 Dress your fings	er the soil t	o make a small h	nole about 2 cm deep.
	1.020	c) into	d) for
a) to	b) on		- Auto Autor
	has big teeth. It is a dan	1000 1000	d) jellyfish
a) snake		c) shark	u) jellylisii
8. If it	, we get water.		Non-taken
a) rain	b) will rain	c) rains	d) raining
9. When I play for	otball, I exc	ited.	- March 1922 1920 19
a) feel	b) feels	c) felt	d) will feel
10. You	take water when you	go to the deser	t. SB
a) must	b) mustn't	c) have	d) has
Read and cor	rect the underlined wor	ds:	
	walking too much in the		()
	dn't see a doctor. She is ve		()
	, I always <u>went</u> to work ea)
	t, I usually go to the beac		()
	graph of Eighty (80) wor		in leading
9	"How we can sa		
	110111110		Portole & FL
			I dreamen





Key Vocabulary	La company of	سية	المفردات الرئي		e arammo
design	يصمم	meeting	اجتماع	computer pr	ogramme: برامج الكمبيوتر
engine	موتور/ محرك	machine	آلة	article	مقال
	Jobs		ئف خ	وظا	
businessman	رجل أعمال	writer	كاتب	accountant	محاسب
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	computer prog	grammer مبرمج کمبیوتر	dentist	طبيب أسنان
engineer	مهندس مدني	photographer	مصور	scientist	عالم
architect	مهندس معماري	teacher	معلم	pilot	طيار

Additional Voc	abulary	<u>مافي</u> ة	المفردات الإ)	
office	مكتب	work (ed)	يعمل	(be) called	یدعی/ یسمی
interesting job	وظيفة شيقة	building	مبنى	sick people	المرضى

Language I	Expressions	رات اللغوية	التعتار)
write >	books بكتب كتب مقالات articles	look after ▶	people's teeth يعتنى بأسنان الناس sick people
	an engine يصمم محركًا	study >	يدرس العلوم science
design >	a building يصمم مبنى	fly	a plane يطير طائرة
	a machine يصمم آلة	take >	photographs يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية
teach >	students يعلم الطلاب	program	يبرمج أجهزة الكمبيوتر computers

My future

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
work with	يعمل باستخدام	find out	parts of أجزاء من
design for	يصمم لـ	work in an office بعمل بالمكتب	

Words and C	Opposit	es	كسها	لمات وعا	الك		
interesting	شيق	uninteresting	غير شيق	șick	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Present		Past simple	Past participle	
meet	يقابل	met	met	
fly	يطير	flew	flown	
teach	يعلم	taught	taught	
write	يكتب	wrote	written	



قاموس "عربی - إنجليزی - فرنسی"

الأن على بوابة الأضواء التعليمية سجِّل الاَّن من خلال: www.aladwaa.com



Language Notes

Study these jobs



"Businesswoman"

A person who works in an office and goes to meetings.



"Architect"
A person who designs buildings.



"Computer programmer"
A person who programs
computers.



"Scientist"
A person who studies science.



"Photographer" A person who takes photographs.



"Dentist"
A person who looks after people's teeth.



"Writer"
A person who writes books or articles.



"Teacher"
A person who teaches students.



"Accountant"
A person who works
with numbers.



"Engineer"
A person who designs
machines.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. A: Where does a/anwork? B: At a school.
 - a) pilot
- b) engineer
- c) teacher
- d) writer
- 2. My uncle is a famous writer. He writes articles and
 - a) books
- b) pens

- c) pencils
- d) bags

Write it right

How to write about your dream job كيفية الكتابة عن وظيفة أحلامك

- My name's (الاسم). I'm (العمر) years old.
- When I grow up, I'd like to be a/ an (الوظيفة) like my (الشخص).
- He/ She works at (المكان).
- I like it because (السبد).
- A/An (طبيعتما) + (الوظيفة).
- It's an interesting job.

Writing tips

Remember to join your ideas with words like and, although or because.

تذكر الربط بين أفكارك بكلمات مثل (و / على الرغم من / لأن)

Example

"My dream job"

My name's Kareem. I'm twelve years old. When I grow up, I'd like to be a teacher like my father. He works in a big school in Benha. A teacher is a person who teaches students. Although teaching is tiring, it's very interesting. It helps our country to be great. A teacher helps students to achieve their dreams and get the job they dream of. I like it because I want to help students to learn new things. It's an interesting job.

Now, y	our	turn:
--------	-----	-------

حان دورك الآن:

My name's		



Listening

Pre-listening question: - What would you like to be?

1. Listen to the desriptions. Can you name each jo? Use the photos to help you. Who can get the most correct answers?

SB page 54

Narrator 2:1

: He looks after people's teeth. Male

He's a dentist(1).

Narrator 2:2

: She studies science. She's a scientist(2). Male

Narrator 2:3

: He's a person who designs machines. Male

He's an engineer⁽³⁾.

Narrator 2:4

: She works with numbers. She finds out how much Male

money a business gets. She's an accountant⁽⁴⁾.

Narrator 2:5

: He takes photos. He's a photographer (5). Male

Narrator 2:6

: She works in an office and goes to meetings. She's Male

a businesswoman⁽⁶⁾.

Narrator 2:7

: He writes computer programs. He's a computer Male

programmer(7).

Narrator 2:8

: She writes books or articles. She's a writer(8). Male

Narrator 2:9

: She designs buildings. She's an architect(9). Male

Post-listening question: - What does a businesswoman do?



عالم (2)

مهندس (3)

محاسب (4)

مصور (5)

سيدة أعمال (6)

مبرمج كمبيوتر (7)

كاتب (8)

مهندس معماری (9)















Reading

Pre-reading question:

- What does an engineer do?

2. Read about Amir's uncle. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

SB page 55

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer (1).

An engineer is a person who designs⁽²⁾ machines⁽³⁾ and engines⁽⁴⁾.

My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman⁽⁵⁾.

That's an interesting job, too.

A businesswoman and a businessman are people who work in an office and go to meetings(6).

Amir

Post-reading question:

- Where does a businesswoman work?



- يصمم (2)
- آلات (3)
- محركات (4)
- سيدة أعمال (5)
- اجتماعات (6)



Vocabulary Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. A/An works in a bank.
 - a) teacher
- b) dentist
- c) writer
- d) accountant
- 2. A businesswoman is a person who works in a/an
- WB

- a) workshop
- b) hospital
- c) school d) office

3. A teacher is a person who students.

WB

- a) teaches
- b) learns
- c) studies
- d) writes



WB

4. An architect is a person	on whob	uildings.	d) solls			
a) builds	b) designs	c) paints	d) sells			
5. A dentist is a person	who looks	people's teeth.	N			
a) at	b) for	c) after	d) up			
6. We will have a/annext week to discuss the problem together.						
		c) article	d) engine			
7. I read a/an about Mohamed Salah in Al-Ahram newspaper.						
		c) book	d) photograph			
8. There is something v	wrong with the	of my car.				
a) tail		c) office	d) engine			
9. My father is a pilot. He always planes to different countries around						
the world.						
a) carries	b) drives	c) flies	d) designs			
10. Hea lovely photograph of the children in the garden.						
a) gave	b) built		d) made			
11. A/Anis a person who studies science.						
a) pilot	b) scientist	c) engineer	d) dentist			
12. I need a computer to program my new computer.						
a) screen	b) programmer	c) interviewer	d) pilot			
13. This part the brain plays an important role in learning.						
a) at	b) by	c) from	d) of			
14. A/Anworks in an office and goes to his meetings.						
a) businesswoman	b) pilot	c) photographer	d) businessman			



1. Relative Pronoun "who"

• We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who):

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who) (يأتي بمعنى الذي / التي).

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.
- A teacher is a **person** who **teaches** students.



- Mona is the girl who sits next to me.
- Ali is the boy who plays football well.
- These are the children who broke the glass.

Read and correct the underlined word:

-The man which sits by my father is his best friend.

.....

2. How to ask and answer about jobs السؤال والإجابة عن طبيعة الوظائف

What do/does + subj. + do?

- What does an architect do?

An architect is a person who designs buildings.

- What do teachers do?

Teachers are people who teach students.

- What do engineers do?

They're people who design machines.

- What does a photographer do?

A photographer is a person who takes photos.

Read and correct the underlined word:

- What do a writer do?

(.....)



Language Exercises

Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	SB			
1. A scientist is a pers	d) who					
a) whom	b) whose	c) where	G) WHO			
2. Whata businesswoman do?			d) has			
a) is	b) do	c) does				
3. A businesswoman						
a) where	b) whose	c) who	d) whom			
4. A teacher is a person teaches students.						
a) who	b) what	c) where	d) when			
5. What do	do?		SB			
a) an accountant	b) engineers	c) a teacher	d) a scientist			
6. I was reading about a man sailed around the world.						
a) who	b) whose	c) whom	d) where			
7. What does a computer programmer?						
a) did	b) doing	c) does	d) do			
8. I met the girlsang in the party.						
a) whom	b) who	c) when	d) what			
Read and correct	the underlined words		and activities of			
1. A pilot is a person v	() WB					
2. Mohamed Salah is a footballer where scores a lot of goals.			() WB			
3. What do writers did?			()			
4. Ali, whose bought a new car, is my neighbour.			()			
5. These are the girls when attended the party last week.			()			
6. The little girl, where is called Kady, is really smart.			()			

SB pages 56 & 57, WB page 108



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		الرئيسية	المفردات		
marine biologist	عالم الأحياء البحرية	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	collect	يجمع
laboratory	معمل	terrible	فظيع	record	يسجل
research	بحث علمي	storm	عاصفة	especially	خاصة
ocean	محيط	results	نتائج	volunteer	يتطوع

Additional Vocabulary		افية	لمفردات الإض		
test	يختبر	interview (ed)	يجرى مقابلة مع	Neweiba	نويبع
planet	كوكب	nice	لطيف	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
protect	يحمى	really	حقا	Thailand	تايلاند

Language Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوية	
go diving = go for a dive	يذهب للغطس	the worst thing	اسوا شيء

Prepositio	ns		قد اللجزر	هرو	
good at	جید فی	decide to	يقرر أن	results of	نتائج لــ
advice to	نصيحة ك	find out about	يكتشف عن	on the computer	على الكمبيوتر

Words and Opposites	الكلمات وعكسها	
love	hate	يكره



Language Notes

حروف الجر مع وسائل المواصلات: Prepositions with means of transport: (by / on / in)

مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية). by

- He travelled to Alexandria by train.
- She went to work by car.

مع وسائل المواصلات (التي يمكن الحركة فيها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية). on

- He travelled to Alexandria on a train.
- She went to work on a bus.

مع وسائل المواصلات (التي لا يمكن الحركة فيها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية). in

- He travelled to Alexandria in a car.
- She went to work in a taxi.

ا نستخدم (on) مع کلمة (foot)

She went to work on foot.

spend + time + (V + ing)

• I spent three hours studying my lessons.

بنفق مالا

My father spent a lot of money last week on clothes.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. She travelled abroada plane.
 - - c) on b) in a) by d) with
- 2. My wife spent 3 hours the food.
 - b) cooked a) cook c) to cook d) cooking

Reading and listening



Pre-reading question:

- What's a marine biologist?

2. Listen to the interview and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 56

My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist.

1. What's a marine biologist?

A marine biologist⁽¹⁾ is a person who studies the ocean⁽²⁾ and the plants and animals in it.

2. Why did you decide to become a marine biologist?

I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

3. What's your day like?

In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs⁽³⁾. On other days, I test water from the ocean in the laboratory⁽⁴⁾. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results⁽⁵⁾ of tests.

4. What's the best thing about your job?

My research⁽⁶⁾ helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

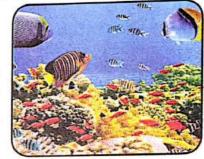
5. And what's the worst thing?

There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather⁽⁷⁾ is terrible⁽⁸⁾. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm⁽⁹⁾!

Post-reading question:

- Where does Nesma go diving?

- عالم أحياء بحرية (1)
- محيط (2)
- الشعاب المرجانية (3)
- معمل (4)
- نتائج (5)
- بحث علمي (6)
- الطقس (7)
- فظيع (8)
- عاصفة (9)







Listening



Pre-listening question:

- What kinds of animals does Nesma study?

SB page 57

Choose the correct answers. Presenter: You visit some interesting places, don't you?

: Yes, I do! At the moment, I'm Nesma working in the Red Sea, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that,

4. Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

I worked in Thailand.

Presenter: Wow! And what different kinds of

animals do you study?

: Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like Nesma

whales(1) and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals

around coral reefs.

Presenter: It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist but it isn't

easy job, is it?

: No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect(2) and record(3). Nesma

It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours

a day.

Presenter: What is your advice to young people who want to become

a marine biologist?

: Work hard at school, especially(4) in Science. You have to love Nesma

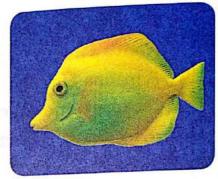
science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you

can about the job. You can even volunteer(5) for dives.

Presenter: That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

: You're welcome. Nesma

Post-listening question: - What should you do to be a marine biologist?



حيتان (1)

يجمع (2)

يسجل (3)

خاصة (4)

يتطوع (5)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	/(2)
Maxism got the Of hor test She did yery Well!	VB)
a) book b) cause c) reason	75
a Usus learning about sea life I want to be a marine	VB
a) architect b) biologist c) engineer	
3. A/An (for example, the Atlantic) is bigger than a sea.	VB
a) ocean b) sea c) river d) lake	
4. The science teacher asked us to what we see in the experiment.	
a) record b) speak c) reply d) rebuild	
5. Every week, I go with my friends to see the coral reefs.	
\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	
6. I spend a lot of time English to get the full mark in the exam. a) study b) to study c) studied d) studying	
27 July 2004 Hate 2794 1717 Tal 20	
7. It's important for us to lookour planet.	
a) after b) at	
8. Marine biologists test water from the ocean in the	
a) Companies b) nospitais	
9. Her was to go to Hollywood and become a movie star.	
a) research b) dream c) test d) planet	
10. I'm very worried about the results the exam.	
a) of b) from c) by d) with	
11. The weather is because there's a storm.	
a) nice b) fantastic c) wonderful d) terrible	
12. My son is very good maths and science.	
a) for b) at c) by d) with	
13. A famous scientist to teach us about our planet.	
a) kept b) volunteered c) spent d) tested	-
14. Egypt can behot in August.	
	A STATE OF



Language *J*

Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يأتى في نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتي قبله (,) و غرضه التأكد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
 - يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبت إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفى إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة).

كيفية تكوين الاستفهام المذيل. How to form a question tag

?ضمير الفاعل + فعل مساعد ,جملة خبرية

- She is a great teacher, isn't she?

- You will play the match, won't you?

- They haven't got the key, have they?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد ... نستخدم (V. to do) ... كالآتي:

المضارع Present	الماضى Past
جمع / I / We / You / They) مع الضمائر → does اسم مفرد / He / She / it) مع الضمائر	
You like meat, don't you?She plays chess well, doesn't she?	He studied his lessons well, didn't he?Mona didn't go to school, did she?

لاحظ:

is not (x) - isn't (√)

- Marwan is a good student, isn't he?
- You played the match yesterday, didn't you?
- Miss Ghada is a businesswoman, isn't she?
- You like maths, don't you?

- ١- تراعى الاختصارات في الاستفهام المذيل.
- ٢- لا بد من التعويض عن الأسماء يضمائر.
- ٣- لا تحول الضمائر في الاستفهام المذيل.
- ٤- يتم الإجابة عن السؤال المذيل بـ (Yes/No).
 - Yes, she is.
 - No, I don't.

- لاحظ التحويلات التالية:

ľm	▶ aren't l?		- I'm a good student, aren't !?
ľm not	▶ am I?		- I'm not bad at maths, am I?
Let's	▶ shall we?	(اقتراح)	- Let's travel to Alexandria, shall we?
Let us	▶ will you?	(إذن)	- Let us watch the film, will you?
'd + inf.	► wouldn't + ضمير الفاعل?		- She'd play the match, wouldn't she?

Language Exercises

ĺ	Choose the correc	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	SB
	1. You want to be a n	urse,?		
	a) don't you	b) don't I	c) do you	d) do l
	2. It isn't hot today,	?		1.071
	a) isn't it	b) is it	c) has it	d) hasn't it
	3. You won't forget to	o phone me,	?	
	a) won't l	b) won't you	c) will I	d) will you
	4. There were a lot of	f people at the meetin	g,?	SB
	a) were there	b) was there	c) weren't there	d) wasn't there
	5. You don't have a b	orother,	.?	SB
	a) do you	b) don't you	c) haven't you	d) have you
	6. Hoda is good at E	nglish,	?	. K 107 F
	a) is she	b) isn't she	c) is Hoda	d) isn't Hoda
	7. I'm a good player,	?		Q
	a) am not I	b) am I	c) aren't l	d) isn't l
	8. Someone will give	e her the money,	?	A STANDARD RANK I.
	a) won't he	b) won't she	c) won't it	d) won't they
	2 Read and correct	t the underlined word	ds:	
	1. You like fish, do yo	ou?		() SB
	2. She sleeps early,	don't she?		()
	3. He is happy, was	he?		()
	4. Menna is a good	student, <u>is not</u> she?		(
	5. Kareem <u>did</u> his ho	omework, did he?		
	6. He has lunch at to	wo o'clock, <u>isn't</u> he?		
				Anadene in

Lessons

General Exercises

1 & 2

A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR				
	Complete	tha	following	dialogue
	Complete	rue	lollowing	ulalogue.

Radwa: What	is your name?		
Menna: My na	ame is Menna.		
Radwa: You d	on't have a brother, (1)	y	ou?
Menna: No, I d	don't. But I have two sisters.	The same and the same	
Radwa : (2)		do you live w	
Menna: I live	with my father, mother and	two sisters.	
Radwa: What	is your favourite (3)		?
Menna: I like	English very much.		
Radwa : And v	what are your favourite hob	bies?	
Menna: I like	drawing and (4)	157110b-3	Unit object
Radwa : (5)	la de la constantina	you go to a prepar	ratory school?
Menna: Yes, I	do.		
	correct answer from a, b, c	ord:	
a) architect	b) pilot	c) engineer	d) doctor
2. A/An	is a woman who w	orks in an office and	goes to meetings.
	an b) businesswoman		
3. A/An	is a person who loo	oks after people's te	eth.
a) writer	b) dentist		d) accountant
4. A/An account	tant is a person who works	nur	mbers.
a) at	b) with	c) in	d) of
5. A/An	is a person who de	signs machines or e	engines.
a) businessma	an b) pilot	c) engineer	d) accountant
6. Her research l	helps tothe	e plants and animal	s in the ocean
a) protect	b) prevent	c) kill	d) eat

7. The teacher's a	dvicest	udents is to study t	heir lessons hard.
a) for	b) from	c) to	d) at
8. This is the wom a) whose	nanwor b) whom	ks as an actress.	d) which
9. He went diving a) don't he	yesterday,b) doesn't he	? c) didn't he	d) did he
10. Nora hasn't go	t any money,	?	English was a second
a) has Nora	b) does Nora	c) has she	d) does she
3 Read and corr	ect the underlined wo	rds:	WD.
1. Hany is the boy	y <u>how</u> lives next door to	me.	() WB
2. I'm not good a	t maths, <u>are</u> I?		()
3. Ali got the full	mark in the exam, didn	't Ali?	()
4. Mona will slee	p early, will not she?		()
4 Write a parag	raph of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	
	"My drea	ım job"	
	1 - 1	reace and the	euchane e
			Usursii
	11070 1107		
	710 mg/801		
	La del		
			0 A F 25 LELECTOR - 1971



SB pages 58 & 59, WB pages 109 & 110

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	ىرئىسية	المفردات ا
education مليم	culture النا	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي social media ثث
pottery		بالغ adult م
tradition (من الماضي أ		مهارات skills ور
traditional يدى		عمل تجاری business ملو
earn عمالًا		يفضل يفضل

Additional Vocabulary	Ċ	المفردات الإضافين	Sept Tell 11 S
hope (d)	یأمل/ یتمنی	hard	بجد المالة عالم
continue (d)	يستمر	market	السوق

Languag	ge Expressions	Later Transfer	ات اللغوية		
buy 🕨	an apartment	يشترى شقة	get	▶ a job	يحصل على وظيفة
get >	married	يتزوج	go	▶ to university	يذهب إلى الجامعة
have >	children	لديه أطفال	learn	▶ to drive	يتعلم القيادة
do 🕨	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	pass	▶ an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
	jewellery	يصنع المجوهرات	earn	▶ money	یکسب مالًا
make >	pottery	يصنع الفخار	change	▶ jobs	يغير وظائف
	a basket	يصنع سلة	work	▶ hard	يعمل بجد

	حروف الجر	
في كل أنحاء الدولة	a way for	طريقة 1ـ
يخطط للمستقبل	work in	يعمل في
حول العالم	learn to drive	يتعلم القيادة
	يخطط للمستقبل	a way for في كل أنحاء الدولة work in

Words and Opposites			الكلمات وعكسها			
teach يُعلم	learn	يتعلم	buy	يشترى	sell	يبيع
modern حدیث/ عصری	traditional	تقليدي	local	محلي	international	دولی

Language Notes

see/ hear

see/ hear + مفعول + (v-ing)

يرى – يسمع (جزءًا من الحدث أو بالمصادفة)

- I saw many people making pottery.

- Theard Sara singing.

see / hear + مفعول + inf.

يرى – يسمع (الحدث بأكمله)

- I saw my friend Ali play football. I saw the match from beginning till end.
- I heard Eman talk to Heba about sports.

learn (how) to + inf.

• Ali learnt (how) to drive his new car.

ينجج في succeed in یجتاز / ینجج في

Omar passed his exams.

(لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر)

• I succeeded in the driving test. (یأتی بعدها حرف جر)

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I heard my neighbourby chance بالمصادفة.
 - a) to call
- b) calls

- c) called
- d) calling

- 2. She learnt the food for her family.
 - a) cooks
- b) cooked
- c) to cook
- d) cook
- 3. Fatmaher final exams. She's very happy.
 - a) succeeded
- b) passed
- c) filled
- d) failed

Write it right

How to write about your future plans کیفیة الگتابة عن خططك المستقبلیة

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm a student at a preparatory school.
- When I go to university, I want to study (المادة).
- I'd like to get a good job in the future.
- When I get married, I'm going to have (عدد) children.
- In (عدد) years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car.

Writing tips

When you write your text, remember to:

- · end with a conclusion
- read your final text and check for any mistakes

عند كتابة النص تذكر التالي:

١. اختتم الفقرة بجملة تلخيصية

٢. اقرأ الفقرة وتأكد من عدم وجود

أخطاء بها

Example

"My future plans"

My name's Tamer. I'm twelve years old. I'm a student at a preparatory school in Giza. I always think about my future and make plans for it. When I leave school, I'd like to join the university. When I go to university, I want to study medicine. I'd like to get a good job in the future. I'd like to have my own clinic and help the poor. When I get married, I'm going to have two children, a boy and a girl. I'll look after them. In five years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car. I'm going to have a modern car. I hope I'll achieve my dreams.

v, your turn:		، دورك الآن:
	"Your future predictions"	allelan van is a
BALL BOARD IN		
-		

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- What do you want to be?

2. Read about Munir's plans for the future. Which sentence is true?

SB page 58

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education⁽¹⁾ is very important.

I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to the university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to the university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject.



تعليم (1)

I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world.

I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

Post-reading question:

- What subject does Munir want to teach?





Listening ___

Pre-listening question:

- Where would Rami like to work?

4. Listen to Rami and Amira talking about their plans for the future. Tick (\checkmark) the things they want to do. What do they both want to do? SB page 59

Presenter: Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

*I really want to be an architect. I must go to the university⁽¹⁾ for that, so I need to work hard. I won't pass⁽²⁾ my exams⁽³⁾ if I don't work hard! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like

(2) يجتاز الامتحانات (3) يتزوج يتزوج يفضل (5)

شقة (6)

الجامعة (1)

to get married⁽⁴⁾ one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo.

Iprefer⁽⁵⁾ the countryside!

Presenter: Amira, what about you?

Amira : I want to go to university, so I hope
I'll pass my exams! If I go to the
university, I'll study science. I'd love to
be a scientist! It's a really interesting



job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment⁽⁶⁾. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children, but I still have a long time for that!

Post-listening question:

- What would Amira love to be?

Reading



Pre-reading question: - Why is it important to keep traditional jobs?

1. Read quickly and match the photos A-D to the texts. There is one extra photo.

SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional⁽¹⁾ jobs and skills⁽²⁾ are still important.



People started making pottery⁽³⁾ thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops⁽⁴⁾ or their own homes. If you go to a village in Fayoum Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults⁽⁵⁾ can learn the skill.



It is traditional to make jewellery⁽⁶⁾ in Kenya. You can see the colourful⁽⁷⁾ jewellery in markets all over the country. Today some local businesses⁽⁸⁾ also use social media⁽⁹⁾ and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition⁽¹⁰⁾ and it helps local people to earn⁽¹¹⁾ money.



It is an important part of Africa's culture⁽¹²⁾ to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

Post-reading question:

- How do you think these jobs will change in the future?









- تقلیدی (1)
- مهارات (2)
- الفخار (3)
- ورش (4)
- بالغون (5)
- مجوهرات (6)
- زاهي الألوان (7)
- عمل تجاری محلی (8)
- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي (9)
- تقليد (10)
- يربح مالًا (11)
- ثقافة (12)



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c	or a:	rsity
1. I hope that I	my exams so that I	can go to the unive	isity.
a) succeed	b) pass	c) fail	a) get
2. If I have enough r	money, I'llan a	apartment near the F	Red Sea. SB
a) do	b) make	c) buy	d) sell
3. People started	pottery thousan	ds of years ago in Eg	gypt. SB
a) going	b) earning	c) taking	d) making
4. I want to	a good job in Alexand	ria as a hotel recepti	onist.
a) get	b) earn	c) pass	d) gain
5. A/Anis repairing things.	a building where tools	and machines are u	sed for making or
a) school	b) workshop	c) theatre	d) cinema
6. Farmers come to	the to sell fres	h fruit and vegetable	es.
a) workshop	b) university	c) market	d) basket
7. A mean	s an ability to do somet	hing well.	WB
a) skill	b) skull	c) skeleton	d) skip
8. His job is to	fantastic jewellery f	or people.	
a) do	b) have	c) take	d) make
9. My brother got m	arried ten years ago. He	three chil	dren.
a) makes	b) does	c) has	d) gives
10. She always	for her future. She h	opes to be a journal	ist.
a) plans	b) earns	c) makes	d) gets
11. The cost of the trip	is L.E. 100 for	and L.E. 30 for child	dren.
a) animals	b) plants	c) adults	d) baskets
12. The garden was fu	II of and fasci	nating flowers.	
a) hopeful	b) tasty	c) modern	d) colourful

Language

The first conditional (If) الحالة الشرطية الأولى
• We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action: • تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.
ال
مضارع بسیط present simple مضارع بسیط
Examples: - If / When I go to university, I'll study maths I'll study maths if / when I go to university If I don't work hard, I won't pass my exams I won't pass my exams if I don't work hard.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct	t answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1. If I visit my grandp	arents,	them a present.	SB
a) gave	b) gives	c) will give	d) giving
2. Lara	to drive if she sta	ys in the city. She'll us	e the bus. SB
a) doesn't learn	b) won't learn	c) don't learn	d) will learn
3. If I to	the university, I'	Il study to be an engir	neer.
a) go	b) goes		d) will go
4. If my father	a new job	, we'll move to Cairo.	SB
a) get	b) gets	c) got	d) will get
5. We t	to the university i	f we don't pass our ex	ams. SB
a) will go	b) go	c) won't go	d) didn't go
6. I will get the full m	ark when I	hard.	
a) study	b) studies	c) studied	d) had studied
Read and correct	the underlined	words:	
1. I will buy a new ca	r <u>what</u> I have a lo	t of money.	()
2. If I ate too many s	weets, I will be ill.		()
3. I would buy a lot of	of things when I g	o to the shops.	()
4. <u>Do</u> you be happy	if you get a good	job?	()

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

		from a b cord: (4	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
	the correct answer	from a, b, c or a.	100
1. Ali goes to school		XI. Luc	d) on foot
a) by car	b) by bike	c) by bus	
2. He talks to his frie	nds at the		d) club
a) class	b) break	c) home	u) cius
3. His favourite subj	ect is		d) science
a) English	b) French	c) maths	d) science
4. After doing his ho	mework, he		D Labora TV
a) studies English	b) sleeps	c) listens to music	d) watches TV
2 Read the following	ng, then answer the	questions:	r and the load of
Nader is a famou	us teacher of science	e in a prep school fo	r boys and girls. He
likes his job very m	uch. He is also help	ful to his students. H	le helps them to do
experiments in the	science lab. He enjo	ys growing flowers ir	the school garden.
He is about twenty f	ive years old. He is m	arried. He has got two	daughters and one
			st two p.m. He's very
kind to his students	. They will always go	to him if they have a	ny problems.
A) Answer the followi			
2. Do you think stud	lents like Mr Nader?	Why?	
		- 1	
) Choose the correct	answer from a, b, o	ord:	
4. Mr Nader has got	children.	The state of the	
a) one	b) no	c) three	d) two
5. The underlined w	ord "it" refers to	- in hotel	
a) work		c) lab	
6. The word "helpfu		/ho	
a) helps others	b) has problems		d) learns from others
-,ps ouriers		3113 HOWEIS	u) learns nom others

3 Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:	WB
1. A means	an ability to do someth	ning well.	d) skip
a) skill	b) skull	c) skeleton	- 1/0
2. You can see peop	le making baskets in	thedown t	d) school
a) workshop	b) field	c) farm	a) scribe.
3 is a goo	d way to communica	te with people in diff	erent countries
a) Radio	b) TV	c) Rocket	d) Social media
4. I that I'll	get a good job in the	e future.	d) travel
a) continue	b) hope	c) pass	
5. It is an important	t skill because it helps	s local people to	money.
a) earn	b) win	c) gain	d) learn
		to make baskets.	ally
a) location	b) traditional	c) traditions	d) traditionally
7 It's very hard to b	uv a/an to o	get married in nowada	ays.
a) denartment	b) apartment	c) room	d) kitchen
a) department	el around the world i	f hea good	job in Egypt.
a) gets	b) got	c) get	d) will get
0 The family		if they move to the cit	ty.
a) would buy	b) bought	c) buying	d) will buy
	ersity. Imat	hs.	
a) studies	b) studied	c) will study	d) would study
	t the underlined wo		
			()
1. If you studied had	rd, you will get high n	idi KS.	()
2. I would get up ea	II, he <u>would</u> grow up	guickly.	()
4. If I won't work ha	rd, I won't pass my ex	ams.	()
4. If I WOITE WORK HA	h of EIGHTY (90) wo	rds on:	
write a paragrap	oh of EIGHTY (80) wo		
	"Tradition	ai jobs	any at was all all all and a line
~			

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 61 & 62, WB pages 111 & 112

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية				
prediction	التنبؤ	نه / برنامج	تطبيق	robot	إنسان آلى	
technology	التكنولوجيا	illnesses	أمراض	health	الصحة	
cure	علاج	disappear (ed)	يختفر		nom-red	

Additional Voc	abulary	ضافية	مفردات الإ		
completely	تمامًا	happen (ed)	يحدث	the countryside	الريف
dive	يغطس	exciting	مثير	change	تغيير

Langua	ge Expressions	ä	يرات اللغوي	نعيال 🖳
	our life easier اسمل	يجعل حياتنا	spend >	يقضى وقتًا مع
make >	predictions ننبؤات	يقوم بعمل ن	design ▶	an app يصمم تطبيقًا إلكترونيًا يصمم لعبة فيديو a video game
do 🕨	طوعيًا voluntary work	يۇدى عملًا ت	have >	a job in لدیه وظیفة فی
stay >	the same	تظل کما هر	find >	cures for يجد علاجات لـــ

Words and Opposites	الكلمات وعكسها	
disappear	appear	يظهر

Language Notes

electric:

كهربائى (يعمل بالكهرباء):

- I hope to buy an electric car in the future.

make

make + (object مفعول) + (adjective)

- Technology will make our lives easier and interesting.

make + (object مفعول) + inf.

- His joke made me laugh.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. My father decided to buy an car to keep the environment clean.
 - a) electricity
- b) electrical
- c) electric
- d) electronic
- 2. He made his father because he failed in the exam.
 - a) happy
- b) pleased c) active
- d) angry
- 3. My mother makes us early for school.
 - a) gets up
- b) getting up c) get up
- d) got up



تابع مستواك الدراسي

من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات شاملة لكل المواد سَجِّلِ الآن مِن خَلال: www.aladwaa.com



Listening _

Pre-listening question:

- What does Hussein want to design?

Listen and complete the fact files.

Presenter: What are your plans⁽¹⁾ for the future, Hussein?

Hussein: I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year,

I want to learn to play the guitar. And before

I leave school, I want to design a video game!

Presenter: Wow! And what about later on? What will

your life(2) be like in ten years' time?

Hussein: In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I

think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter: Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter: Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja: Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there

are lots of other things I want to do first.

Presenter: Tell me about them.

Khadeeja: Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new

language(3). I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter: And what will your life be like in 15 years' time?

Khadeeja: That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 15 years'

time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter: Thanks, Khadeeja.

Post-listening question:

- What would Khadeeja like to learn?













Reading



Pre-reading question:

- Do you think technology will make our lives more interesting?

2. Read Ahmed's text. How many of your ideas were the same? SB page 62

My predictions(1) for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.

Technology⁽²⁾ will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps(3) for everything.

Scientists will find new cures⁽⁴⁾ for illnesses⁽⁵⁾ so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear⁽⁶⁾ completely.

All our cars will be electric⁽⁷⁾. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots⁽⁸⁾ will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

Post-reading question:

- Do you think all our cars will be electric?























Listening ____

Pre-listening question:

- What does Dina want to be?

3. Listen and put Dina's plans in the correct order (from first to last).

WB page 111

Dina: I want to be a doctor, but I need a lot of skills to do that.

Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor, so he can give me some advice. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor.



Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work at a children's hospital. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

Post-listening question:

- Where is she going to study English?



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1. Technology will	our lives easier a	and more interesting	Name		
a) have	b) take	c) make	u) leave		
2. A/An is s	omething on your ph	one that helps you	use maps, book		
tickets, etc.			and the second s		
a) file	b) click	c) icon	d) app		
3. Tois to di	raw something that you	u plan to build or ma	ike.		
a) design	b) build	c) plan	d) hope		
	e area that is outside a t	town or a city.	WB		
a) street	b) city	c) countryside	d) town		
P	completely i	n the future.			
a) disappear	b) dive	c) make	d) die		
	some of people's job	os in the future.			
a) make	b) play	c) take	d) do		
	e in the future	, but some things w	ill stay the same.		
a) changes	b) lives	c) parts	d) similarities		
	new for illnes	sses so people will liv	ve longer.		
	b) health	c) diseases	d) cures		
a) doctors	nat he willa v	ideo game in the fu	ture.		
		c) do	d) design		
a) build	b) give		7		
10. In the future, we wo	on't have to learn to		20 N 12 N		
a) dive	b) fly	c) drive	d) design		
11. I think we'll live on	other planets. This is n	ny	-		
a) information	b) prediction	c) action	d) relation		





Talking about your future plans

الحديث عن خططك في المستقبل

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll be married.
- Before I go to the university, I'd like to learn to drive.
- In five years' time, I want to buy a new car.



Complete the following dialogue:

Maha: Hello, Dina. How are you?

Dina: Fine, Maha.

Maha: Can you tell me about your future (1).....?

Dina: Sure. In four weeks' time, I'm (2)...... to finish school.

Maha: What are you going to do when you finish school?

Dina: First, I'd (3).....to join the university of Engineering.

Maha: What else?

Dina: In five years' time, I (4)..... to learn a new language.

Maha: Great. What language (5)......you like to learn?

Dina: Italian.

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

Omplete the following the foll	owing dialogue:	h, yan sanan ji daya sayan d	
Ahmed: Where did	you go on holida	y last year?	
			2
Ahmed: Where did	you (2)		
	my uncle's flat.	for freeze with - m	521 d 4-
Ahmed: (3)		did you travel th	ere:
Rami : (4)		<u> </u>	rain.
Ahmed: What did y	ou eat there?		
			. 11511.
2 Choose the corre			
1. Scientists will find	new cures for ill	nesses so people will live .	d) longor
a) taller	b) shorter	c) worried	d) longer
2will	make our life eas	ier and more interesting.	
a) Technology		b) Illnesses	
c) Predictions		d) Hospitals	
3. I don't think we w	vill have	doctors or teachers!	
a) technology		b) robot	
c) diving		d) automatic	
	, I want to	a new language.	
a) drive	b) dive	c) learn	d) hope
5. Life in the	is quieter t	han life in the city.	
a) prison	b) court	c) hospital	d) countryside
6. When did the acc	ident	?	
a) cause	b) result	c) happen	d) get
7. Scientists are tryi			
a) make	b) get	c) find	d) have
a) make	b) get	C/ IIIIG	a) nave

8. I'll study medic	ine I go to	the university.	d) what
a) when	b) where	c) why	
9. Ahmed,a) which	is a famous playe b) how	r, is my friend.	d) whose
a) Which	ouy a new apartment if v		the city.
a) moved	b) moves	c) moving	d) move
Read and corre	ect the underlined wor	ds:	gently the oak
2 Today was a nic	won't catch the bus. e day, isn't it?		(
3. Hazem won't trav	vel around the world if he	will get a good job in	Egypt. (
4. Technology will	make our lives more int	eresting, won't she	? (
	aph of EIGHTY (80) wor		
	"How will life be a	fter 50 years?"	
		mod test desper	
		Vortegado (1)	n het
[2]	-374-1 VIA	2007	- I was Proved
12)			e 2 mais Person I i
las		AVST JEST	•••••••
la.		300.77 3000	•••••••
			•••••••
			••••••
	=15.115	بنائ	••••••
	السئلة السئلة	بنك	•••••••
	تاسئالة	تبر نفسك الآن	
	قائستا	ـُـــّبِرِ نَـَـْسَكُ الْأَنْ و أكب ننك للأسئلة التفاعلية	
	i i	ـُــتبِر نَّمُسَكُ النَّنُ ع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية ن ذلال بوابة الأضواء التعليمية	
	i i	ـُـــّبِرِ نَـَـْسَكُ الْأَنْ و أكب ننك للأسئلة التفاعلية	

Videoscript >

SB page 60

What job will you do when you are older? Will you be an engineer, who designs exciting new things? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people? Or will you be an architect, who designs new buildings and even cities?

الرياح (1)

أدوات (2)

قرن (3)

حقنة (4)

طريقة (5)

عمود (6)

طين (7)

These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too? They helped to form the world we know today.

Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats. These boats used the wind⁽¹⁾ to help them travel to other parts of the world.

The ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use similar ideas to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools⁽²⁾. We can see some of them in this picture. The ancient Egyptians also had dentists.

In the tenth century⁽³⁾, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe⁽⁴⁾. Today doctors and scientists use syringes every day. Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the pyramid at Saqqara using this method⁽⁵⁾. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns. These columns⁽⁶⁾ made buildings very strong. Before this, the ancient Egyptians used mud⁽⁷⁾ and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	المفردات الرئيسية	13 A MAY 25 (252) 23 PM
design يصمم	make pottery يصنع الفخار	computer programmes برامج الكمبيوتر
engine موتور/ محرك	meeting اجتماع	article مقال
marine biologist عالم الأحياء البحرية	machine	terrible فظیع
laboratory معمل	research بحث علمي	عاصفة storm
dream حلم	weather الطقس	robot انسان آلی
prediction التنبؤ	job وظيفة	apartment شقة
technology التكنولوجيا	app تطبیق/ برنامج	plan يخطط
get married يتزوج	illnesses أمراض	make jewellery يصنع المجوهرات
have children لديه أطفال	get a job يحصل على وظيفة	earn money يكسب مالًا
pass an exam يجتاز اختبار	go to university يذهب إلى الجامعة	change jobs يغير وظائف
do a job (وظيفة) يقوم بعمل	learn to drive يتعلم القيادة	and a rivest set of
Jobs		وظان
accountant محاسب	architect مهندس معماری	businessman رجل أعمال
businesswoman سيدة أعمال	computer programmer مېرمج کمبيوتر	dentist طبیب أسنان
engineer مهندس مدنی	photographer مصور	scientist عالم
writer کاتب	teacher معلم	pilot طيار



ضمير الوصل (who) ''A. Relative Pronoun "who"

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who)

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.

2. Question Tag

السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يأتي في نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتي قبله (,) و غرضه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
 - يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبت إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفى إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة)
- -You like meat, don't you?
- -She plays chess well, doesn't she?
- -He studied his lessons well, didn't he?

الحالة الشرطية الأولى 3. The first conditional

● نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.

If / When	present simple مضارع بسیط	subject + will + inf.
Subject + will + inf.	if / when	present simple مضارع بسیط

Examples:

- If Igo to the university, Ill study maths.
- Ill study maths when Igo to university.

Speaking

Talking about your future plans الحديث عن خططك في المستقبل

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll be married.

Test

Based on Unit 12

1 Listen and cho	ose the correct answer	irom a, b, c or d: (کتاب	(نص الاستماع في نهاية ال
1. Maths lessons l a) pictures	nelp the pupils to learn ab b) history	c) languages	d) numbers
2. Pupils can pain a) maths	t and draw inb) art	lessons. c) English	d) science
3. Pupils like thei a) hospital	b) class	c) school	d) park
4to	ells us about countries. b) Art	c) Social studies	d) Science
Ali :What's y Nadia : I usually Ali :When do Nadia : At 7 o'cle Ali :How do Nadia : (3) Ali :When do Nadia : At 2 o'cle	e following dialogue: our day like? get up at six o'clock. o you (1) ock. you (2) o you (4)	to school my father's car. school?	
Nadia : After lur		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	your nomework

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Menna loves technology. Her favourite hobby is playing video games. She usually plays them on her laptop, but sometimes she plays them on her mobile phone. Her favourite subject at school is computer studies! At break and lunchtime, she stays in the classroom and looks at video game websites on her phone.

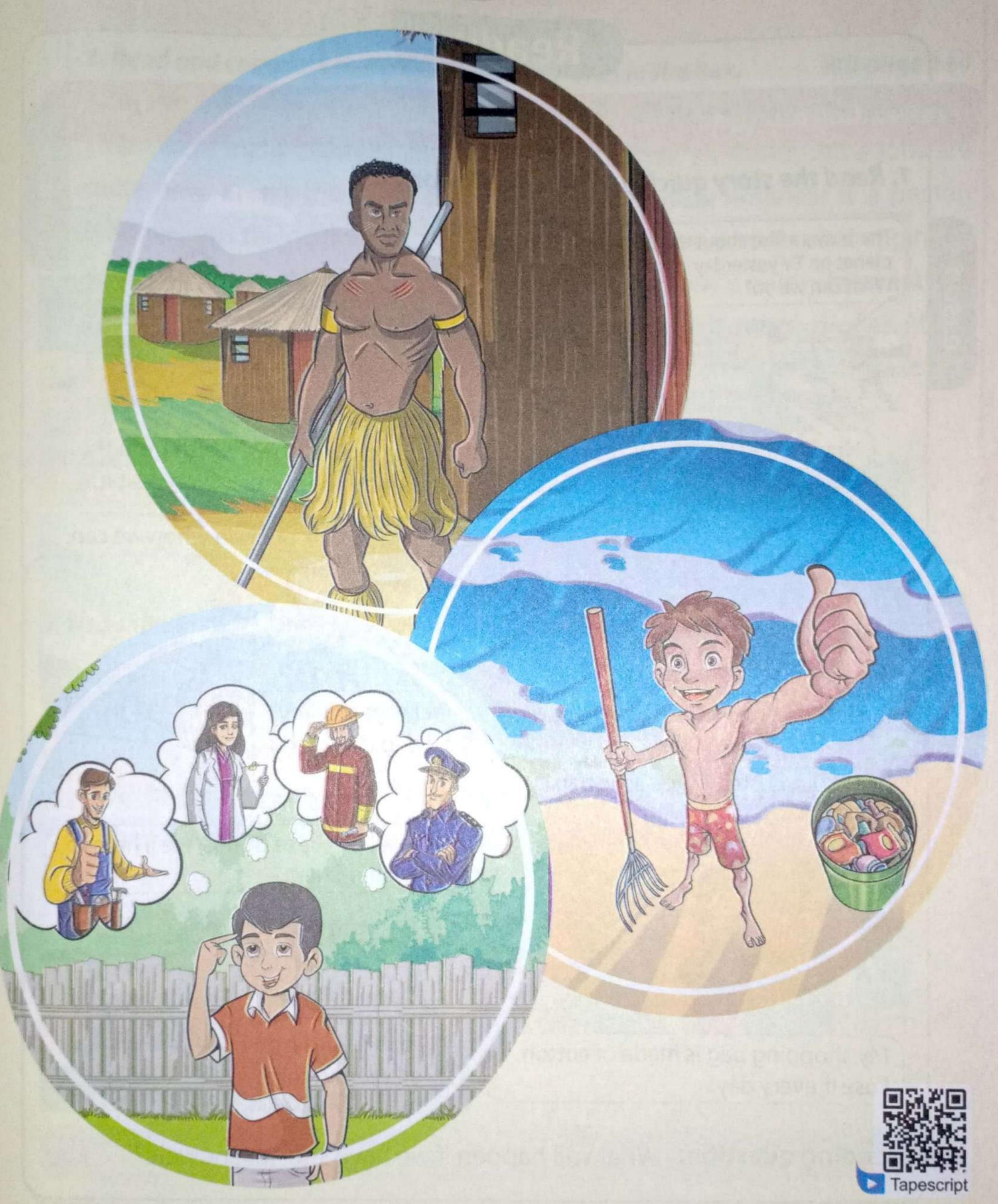
Marwan loves nature. He likes watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects. He doesn't like being in the house; he likes being in the garden. He has got a mobile phone. He doesn't send messages or make video calls on his phone, but he takes photos of flowers.

A	Answer the following	a auestions.		
		love?		platin sit .
	2. What is Menna's fa	vourite hobby?		1 1 1 1
	3. What does Marway	n do on his mobile?		
B	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	٠	
		ne, you can		
	a) take photos	ne, you can		
	c) send messages		b) make video call	- SOC 1 51 5 F
		ama Ilahan II	d) all the mention	There yet.
		onoun " <u>them</u> " refers to		N to also also est
	a) video games		c) mobile phones	d) technology
		games on her		
	a) mobile	b) laptop	c) book	d) a & b
	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
	1. My father wrote a/	an about	sports in Al Ahram n	ewspaper.
	a) article	b) office	c) book	d) photograph
	2. She bought a new	washing	to wash her clothes.	
			c) article	d) engine
	3. A/An	is the person who take	s photographs.	
	a) engineer		b) scientist	
	c) teacher		d) photographer	
		years old, she	to work in the s	ame company.
	a) continues	b) looks	c) helps	d) lives
	A STATE OF THE STA	ybuying		
	2	b) for	c) by	d) with
	a) to	12 11000 N		
		el the wor		
	a) all	b) around	c) with	d) over

Unit 🖳			
7. He	married when he was	s 24 years old.	ما/ مانما
a) had	b) made	c) got	d) did
	e personh	elps sick people.	
	b) whose	c) whom	d) when
a) who		1.0	
9. If he visits the	museum, he	fantastic statues.	d) saw
a) will see	b) would see	c) see	u) sav
10. Waleed doesn	't like camping,	?	- 4 vapa terto .c
a) does he	b) doesn't he	c) doesn't Wale	ed d) does Waleed
6 Read and cor	rect the underlined wo	ords:	
1. This is the ma	n whose helped me to c	arry the bags.	()
	ard, you <u>would</u> earn a lot		()
			() WB
	k better English if you <u>pr</u>		L. TENES IN
4. The man who	om won the prize, is my r	neighour.	V 23ELT 1000 - 1 0
6 Write a para	graph of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	
	"Tech	nology"	Chings singles
1 155 101 101	nost sports as Al Alganti	S management (MVS)	July Pelisi (M. I.
harver in be			
	colorioremációw of	and the second stay we.	n a serporad and K
s serif M 1944el	ret, ce dispusados.	E 1984 8572/30114	

Review Units 10, 11 & 12



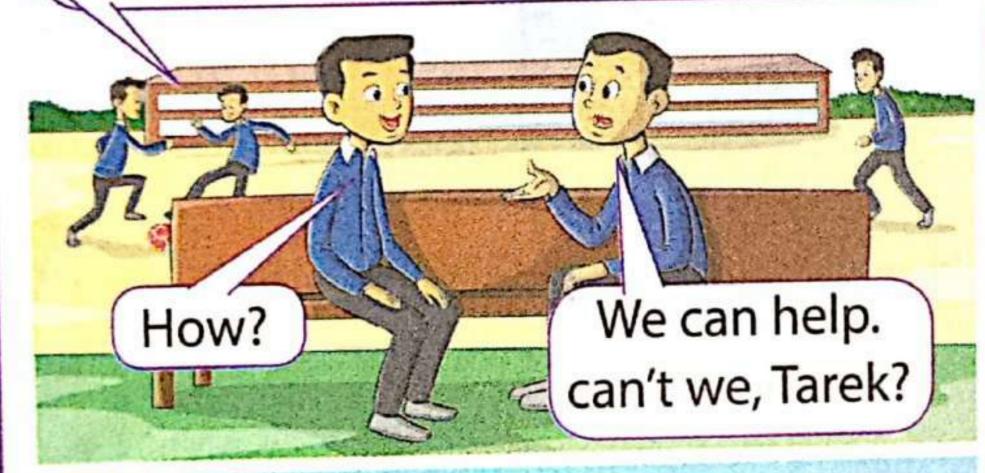


Reading

Pre-reading question: - Why should we pick up the rubbish from the beach?

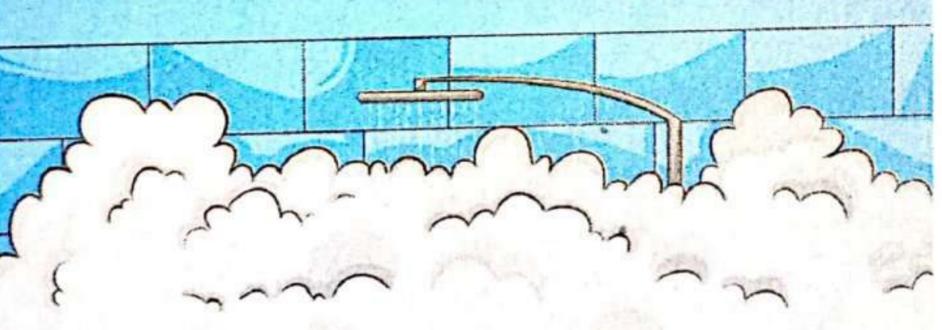
1. Read the story quickly. Why is Tarek worried?

There was a film about the dangers to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do?



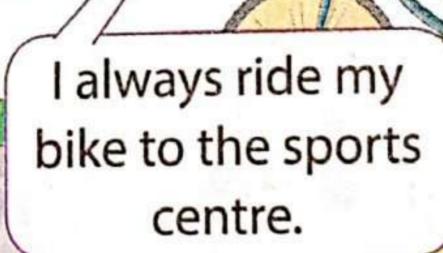
If we pick up the rubbish from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

We must walk or cycle when we can.



If we have shorter showers, we'll save water.

You mustn't buy plastic bag.



If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.



My shopping bag is made of cotton.
I use it every day.



Post-reading question: - What will happen if we have shorter showers?

Reading |

Pre-reading question? - What does an aeronautical engineer do?

1. Read and complete the article with the words in the box.

WB page 114

In the past, many people had **traditional** jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, **aren't** they? For example, an aeronautical engineer is a person **who** designs things that fly. If you **want** to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very **interesting**. If you want to help future technology, perhaps you **will** design drones. Many people think that drones will **carry** our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, **won't** it?

Post-reading question: - Do you think people will stop doing traditional jobs?

Listening

3. Listen and match each speaker with what they are doing.

WB page 114

1. Guessing something

I'm not sure what this souvenir made of. Is it plastic or stone?

2. Giving instructions in order

OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow.

Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft.

So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do?

Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3. Checking information

Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4. Talking about future plans

Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity.



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What are magazines made of?

1. Hala and Malak are doing a recycling project at school. Listen and tick (\checkmark)

the materials you hear.

SB page 65

Malak: Here are the boxes for the recycling project. Different rubbish

goes into different boxes.

Hala: Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak: What is it made of - plastic or glass?

Hala: It's made of plastic.

Malak: OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala: Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak: If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala: What about this magazine? It's made of paper.

Malak: It goes into the red box.

Hala: Where can I put this can?

Malak: If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala: Yes, it's made of metal... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak: What's left?

Hala: Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak: We're not going to recycle the clothes – but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange

box, please.

Hala: The orange box ... OK.

Malak: Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.

Post-listening question:

- What are T-shirts made of?



Based on Units 10, 11 & 12

00

	Listen and choose the co	rrect answer from	n a, b, c or d: (بكتاب	(نص الاستماع في نهاية ا
	1. The weather in Egypt is			
	a) cold b)	warm	c) hot	d) cool
	2. The weather in winter is			And the first of the Party St.
	a) cold b)	hot	c) cool	d) warm
	3. People go to	in spring.		
	a) parks b)	clubs	c) schools	d) buildings
	4. It is in sum	mer, so people g	o to Alexandria.	
	a) hot b)	cool	c) cold	d) quite hot
2	Complete the following			
	Ayman: Do you like spor	ts, Ramy?		
	Ramy : Yes, I (1)	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
	Ayman: Who is your (2)			sports star?
	Ramy: Mohamed Salah	, he is a great (3)		······································
	Ayman : Does he (4)	······	a lo	t of goals?
	Ramy: Yes, he does. He	is the best player	in the world.	
	Ayman: What team does	he (5)		for?
	Ramy : Liverpool.			

Read the following, then answer the questions:

A doctor who worked in a village was very angry because many people used to stop him in the street and ask his advice. In this way, he was never paid for his services and he never succeeded in earning much money. He thought to <u>put an</u> <u>end to this</u>.

One day he was stopped by a young man who said to him, "Oh, Doctor, I'm so glad to see you. I've got a pain in my left side." The doctor seemed to be interested and said, "Shut your eyes and get your tongue out of your mouth".

Then, he went away, leaving the man standing in the street in such funny appearance. People who saw him thought he was mad and laughed at him.



A) Answer the following	ng questions:		
1. Where did the dod			
2. What was the you	ng man's problem	?	
3. What did the doct			
B) Choose the correct	answer from a, b	cord:	
4. The doctor was	······································		
a) good	b) polite	c) interesting	d) unfriendly
5. A lot of people lau	ughed at the	vivativas at meneral sur meneral	
a) doctor	b) child	c) old man	d) young man
The underlined p	hrase "put an end	<u>to it"</u> means	•••
a) stop it	b) play it	c) be angry with it	d) make it funny
(4) Choose the corre	ect answer from a	, b, c or d:	
		ke the window	
a) stone	b) leather	c) glass	d) wool
2. Put the bread and	d bake it in a hot	for ten minut	tes.
a) oven	b) tap	c) stone	d) wool
3. She has worked	all he	r life to be a businesswon	nan.
a) hardness	b) hardly	c) hardest	d) hard
4. After an hour of s	wimming, a	stung me in my h	nand.
a) whale	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) turtle
5. Plastic bottles car	n be	into clothing.	
a) recycled	b) grown	c) thrown	d) stung
6. I want a good	to desig	n my new villa.	
a) architect	b) pilot	c) teacher	d) doctor
7. There are some c	ountries which are	famous for	. pottery.
a) doing	b) eating	c) taking	d) making
8. If we heat water,	it int	o steam.	
a) turn	b) turns	c) turned	d) will turn

9. We	to the moon in the	future.	
a) go	b) goes	c) went	d) will go
10. People	smoke in hosp	itals. It isn't allowed t	o do that.
a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) will
Read and cor	rect the underlined w	ords:	
1. Mona studied	her lessons well, didn'	t Mona?	()
2. Ali is the man	whom wants to marry	my sister.	()
3. There was a lo	t of houses in our area	in the past.	()
4. If you watch the	ne match, you would s	ee Salah score goals.	()
6 Write a parag	raph of EIGHTY (80)	vords on:	
		in the future"	
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	••••••		
	•••••		
••••••••••			
		القامول	
TANCOLUMN TO AND THE PARTY OF T			
		س "عربی - إنجليزی - فرنسی	
	ww	، بوابة الأضواء التعليمية آن من خلال: w.aladwaa.com	A STATE OF THE STA

End of Term Practice

(WB) Pages 116-117

	Listen	and choose th	e correct answer	from a, b, c or d.	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
	1. What	does the woma	n want to buy?		
		ewspaper.		b) A new b	
		ew phone.		d) Some p	notographs.
		10.5	s to buy is		
		e and expensive		b) small an	d expensive
		II and cheap		d) large an	
	- Miles	•	ant ask the woma	n about?	
		name.	b) Her job.	c) Her hob	oies. d) The price.
		oman is a			
	a) pho	tographer	b) painter	c) journalis	t d) doctor
2	Comp	lete the follow	ing dialogue.		
	Tarek	: You're going	to go to university	y in September, are	n't you?
	Ali	: Yes, but (1)	I go to ι	university, I want to	improve my English.
	Tarek		going to do that?		
	Ali				ne summer holidays.
			ng to a language		
	Tarek			earn English? In my (3)
		American Engli			
	Ali			nsive to go there. I'	d rather go to London.
				ou? How was it the	
	Ali				
-	1		Thon answer the	CHIOCHIONC	

Read the following. Then answer the questions.

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. It is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is

End of Term Practice

usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will *collapse* when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help, get respect for their work.

A) Answer the following			
i. wiiat is unusual a	bout the Great Mosque i	n Mali?	
2. What is the main	idea of the passage?		
3. Do you think we s	should keep ancient build	dings? Why? Why no	ot?
B) Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or c	l:	
	ud becomes		
a) soft	b) hard and strong	c) difficult to use	d) very old
5. What do you thin	k the word <i>collapse</i> mea	ns?	
a) Fall down.	b) Get bigger.	c) Disappear.	d) Turn to water.
6. The underlined w	ord "it" refers to		
a) mud		b) Africa	
c) Mali		d) The Great Mose	que in Mali
Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c o	rd.	
1. Most windows ar	e made of		
a) wool	b) glass	c) cotton	d) paper
2. You can usually	paper, so don	't throw it away.	
a) recycle	b) cycle	c) heat	d) hit
3. We are going to g	go across Sin	ai.	
a) trekking	b) tricking	c) fishing	d) swimming
4. We decided to pla	ay basketball at the sport	S	
a) match	b) wheel	c) funfair	d) centre
5. The teacher asked	d the students to work in	pairs and	a quiz.
a) throw	b) do	c) make	d) let
6. The story is interest	esting, it?		
a) does	b) doesn't	c) isn't	d) is

Practice 7. I hope we to the moon in the future. d) going b) are going to go c) went a) will go 8. The old car is than the new car. d) noisiest c) noisier b) more noise a) noise 9. Children usually enjoy when they play on the beach. d) himself c) ourselves b) herself a) themselves 10. Khalid went to the park ten minutes d) next c) ago b) then a) since Read and correct the underlined words. 1. If I feel tired, I usually will go to bed. 2. My uncle is a seller; he works on a big ship. 3. A doctor is someone which looks after sick people. 4. Which animals have a shall or a tail? Write a paragraph of seventy (70) words on "How to keep a beach clean". Start with a topic sentence. · Write a short conclusion. Write details on how to keep a beach clean.





Mew Hello!

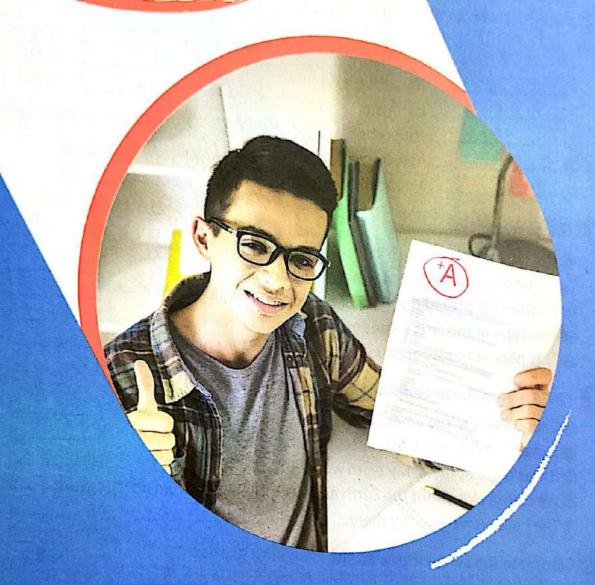


2021



Skills & Research Projects





Learning Outcomes

- Vocabulary Practice
- 2 Language Practice
- 3 Speaking Practice

١- تدريبات على أهم المفردات.

٢- تدريبات على القواعد اللغوية،

٢- تدريبات على مهارات التحدث.

Unit 7 How was your weekend?

	correct verb:			
*	d	lo - listen - go - l	nave - meet	. 5
1	my be	est friend		
2	to mu	ısic		
3	shop	ping		
4	home	ework		
5	a fant	tastic weekend		
Guess	what it is:			
1 Cruso	e ate this on the is	sland. It was ven	/ nice	, 5
Wher	you put a stone i	n water, it will do	this	(
Peop	le first played this	type of music a l	ong time ago	(
4 This t	ype of music is so	metimes very lou	ıd.	(
5 This p	person travels on s	hips or boats for	a job.	(
	here these peop			
1 Let's	go on the big whe	el there!		. 5
2 I love	ed the fish, but I die	dn't see any wha	les there.	(
3 It wa	s great at there. M	y team won 2-0!		(
	earnt a lot about the palls are very heavy		moon there.	(
Compl	ete the sentences	with the follow	ing words:	
1.4	storm - diar	y - delicious - ac	dventure - nobody)
			story by Daniel Defoe	

B Language Practice

	20
Complete with the past simple:	
1 Whatyouyou ido) last weekend?	5
2 I(not/watch) a football match yesterday.	
3 I(ride) on the big wheel.	
(see) an exhibition about dinosaurs.	
5 I(go) bowling.	
Find the mistake and correct it:	5
1 He drives to Alexandria with his family last month.	(
She went shopping with her mum next Sunday.	(
3 He has lunch in the school canteen with Sami yesterday.	(
4 He goes to the sports centre with his dad last weekend.	(
5 Do you alone?	(
Choose the correct words:	
(How / Did) was your last birthday?	5
2 What did you (did / do) last weekend?	
(Have / Do) you got a new school bag?	
(Do / Can) Crusoe sleep in a bed?	
(Were / Can) you see the island?	
Write the questions:	_
1 I went to the museum two weeks ago.	5
2 No, I don't like jazz, but I like pop.	***************************************
3 I like fruit because it's good for you.	370
4 I come to school by bus.	
5 No, I can't play chess.	***************************************

Speaking Practice

Supply the	e missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:
1 Tamer	: Where did you go last weekend?
Nada	
2 Mother	?
Son	: My last English lesson was at twelve.
3 Munir	?
Munira	: I felt nervous when I started a new school.
⁴ Dina Diana	: What activities should you do for your birthday?
5 Sama	Dreaksparation tab and little exercise among selection were se
Soad	: I like jazz music.
6 A	: What can't you do?
В	· Second springsess of the
2 Complete	the mini-dialogues with the following words:
	OK - dear - terrible - great
1 A	: How was your weekend?
В	Oh, it was
2 A	my team lost 5–2.
В	Oh
3 Ali	: Hi, Hisham. How was your weekend?
Hisham	It wasbecause I went to the bowling alley with my cousins.
4 Suzan	: Hi, Judy. How was your weekend?
Judy	It wason Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre in the evening.



The amazing world around us

)
	(A) Vocabul	ary Practice		
			2	0
Match the word	s with their meani	ngs:	7	_
<u> </u>				5
A 1 chase		В		
1. cheap	a) not quiet			
2. deep 3. noisy	b) measuring	g something from o	ne side to the otho	
4. safe				I
5. wide	e) not dange	g water from the to	to the bottom	
Answers: 1. ()	2. ()	3.() 4(5.()	
Complete the se	entences with the	following words		
capital - crowded	- empty - low - narrow	. t		70
(1) The D. ID	ampty low-liarrov	w - further - noisy - por	pulation - wide - opene	ed
The Red Pyrar	nid is	away from the co	entre of Cairo, so it	- 1
				5 1
ine Al Hamra	Tower in Kuwait fir:	st in 20	011	
Surigitor 13 till	= Of T	hailand		
🥶 ine	of Brasilia is abo	out four and a half	m: !:	
We need to be	Jy some more water	er. This bottle is	nillion.	
Be careful you	don't hit your hea	d on the door. It is v		
Only people a	nd bikes can go do	win that was !!	ery	
8 The teacher w	as andry because	wn that road becau	se it is very	
The second of	as alld A necanze	III THE STUDENTE WAY		•
- TO COLL C SAALL	acioss the livel be	re pecalise it is you		
• The market is a	ways very busy at thi	s time. Don't go now	or it will be very	
Find the mistak	e and correct it:			
1 The Tahya Ma	sr fridge is about 54	40 metres long		5
2 Many than 37	,500,000 people liv	e in Tokyo Japan	(••••
3 The Gotthard	Base Tunnel in Swi	tzerland is 2,300 me	tros	•••••
above the gro	und	(26) Idilu is 2,500 Me	ues	
			(
	ople live in Cairo?		(
Ine Cairo City	is the tallest buildi	ng in Egypt.	(

B Language Practice

	1
20	

Put the adjectives between bureless in the correct form:	
Put the adjectives between brackets in the correct form:	
My brother has a(tidy) room than me.	1
Australia is(big) than England.	•
3 I'm (good) now than yesterday.	
She's got(little) money than you, but she do	osnit
He thinks Chinese is	esii i care.
6 Valencia played (bally the played)	ie world.
Valencia played(bad) than Real Madrid yeste	erday.
7 Cats are not (intelligent) as dogs.	
8 Show me (good) restaurant downtown.	
(hot) desert of all is the Sahara and it's in Afri	ca.
Who is(old) person in your family?	
	About 1
Find the mistake and correct it (only one sentence is correct): 1 My house is big than yours.	1
2 This flower is beautiful than that one.	
3 This is the interesting book I have ever read.	
4 Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers.	(
5 Which is the more dangerous animal in the way to	(
6 A holiday by the sea is good than a holiday in the mountains.	(
A ANDO 12 LICLIERE MOLITAIL OIL GALIUI	(
The weather this summer is even bad than last summer.	(
9 He was the cleverest person of all.	(
1 think "Frozen" is interesting than "Moana".	(

Speaking Practice)

1		
-	45	J
Ų	12	1

Answer the following qu	
which pyramid is taller,	the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?
Which building is taller, in Kuwait?	, the Shanghai Tower in China or the Al Hamra Towe
3 Which tower is more m Tower in Kuwait?	nodern, the Shanghai Tower in China or the Al Hami
4 Do you agree that Cairo	o is the biggest city in the world?
What's the most difficu	lt subject at school?
Supply the missing part 1 A: What's B: I think it's very imp	s in the following mini-dialogues: ortant to be healthy
A:Which sport do you	u think is better, football or tennis? my opinion, tennis is better because you do not
3 A: What's the best pla B: I'm	ace to play tennis near here?it's the sports club.
4 A:time to go to a spo	agree that Thursday evening is the most expensive orts club?
B: I disagree, because	e it's the same price every day.
All and the second of the seco	about going to the sports club
	idea! var delle vastellegt het en soprage, met en er til er e



Adventure!



A Vocabulary Practice Find its correct verb:	20
look - have - try - go - take	
1a photo	3
2rock climbing	
on a boat trip	
a picnic	
Guerra scary	
Guess what it is:	
We can't go today because there is no wind!	5
	()
© I love going down rivers. It's usually very quiet!	()
We sometimes go for two days or more, usually across the desert Solve this sport because I'm good at swimming under the sert	()
5 I love this sport because I'm good at swimming under the wate 1 It is usually year.	. ()
1 It is usually you.	r. ()
1 It is usually very (sun - sunny) in August.	
3 There is (are all toudy because there are a let a	5
2 It is not very hot today because there are a lot of (clouds - clouds). 3 There is (snow - snowy) at the top of that mountain. Look, it is 5 Don't swim in the sea when it is (fog - foggy) because you are	idy) in the sky.
6 Don't swim in the sea when it is (fog - foggy) because you say	all white!
The roads are dangerous when it is (fog - foggy) because you car Don't swim in the sea when it is (storm - stormy). It is dangerous the mistake and correct it:	it see very well. us,
1 I'm reading an article about adventurous sports.	
2 I'm not going to do anything scared. It is us	5
2 I'm not going to do anything scared. It is very difficult to ride	()
	(
THE COUNTY OF THE COUNTY AND THE COU	()
5 This summer, I'm going in holiday with my family.	()
(10)	()
·	()

B Language Practice

1	Fill in the blanks with the correct reflexive pronouns:	10
ار	1 did not want to believe it and then I saw it	
	2 The girl looked at in the mirror.	
	3 Farida, you'll have to do your homework	
	You don't need to help them. They can do it	
	6 I introduced to my new neighbour.	
	6 Boys, can you make your beds?	
	7 She made a pullover.	
	8 What happens when a fighting fish sees in	a mirror?
	The father decided to repair the car	
	10 We can move the table	ate and a second
2	Fill in the blanks with the correct form of going to:	10
	1 him tomorrow.	(meet
	2 They to Dahab.	(drive
	3 He to the football match.	(go
	She her aunt.	
	5 We a test next Sunday.	(have)
	6 They them tea.	
	7 My friends their holidays in Hurghada.	(spend)
	My unclea birthday present for Harry.	(buy)
	9 the rabbits.	(feed)
	10 Winter holidaysin the first week of Februa	
3	Find the mistake and correct it:	
9		5
	1 The cat nearly killed herself when it ran across the road.	()
	2 He always looks at herself in the mirror.	()
	3 We helped yourselves to the coffee.	()
	The children enjoyed himself at the beach.	()
	5 The two of you shouldn't do that. You'll hurt yourself.	()



20

Match to make sentences or questions:

5

A 1. What shall we do 2. Why don't we 3. What about 4. I'd prefer 5. I'd rather B a) to play tennis. b) going windsurfing? c) this weekend? d) play chess. e) go kayaking?

Answers: 1. ()

2.()

3.()

4.()

5.()

Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:

...

- ² A : _____?
 - B: She is going to try windsurfing tomorrow morning.
- 3 A:.....try mountain biking?
 - B: No, I'm not going to do anything scary.
- 4 A: Who?
 - B: My sister is going to cook our meal this evening.
- 5 A: What do you think the most dangerous form of transport is?

B:_____

5

Complete the sentences with the following words:

rather - about - shall - Let's - don't

- 1) What we do this afternoon?
- 2 Why we go swimming?
- 3) I'ddo something more exciting.
- 4 How going windsurfing?
- 5) _____go kayaking.

unit 10

Welcome to my home!



(A) Vocabulary Practice

	_
2	_
•	_

Match ol	piacte with	thair	materiale
Match	ojects with	then	materials.

1		
	-	-
5	•	1

			В	
1. sofa	a) wo	ood		
2. table	b) lea	ther		
3. curtains	c) gla	SS		
4. lamp	d) me	etal		
5. fork	e) co	tton		
swers: 1.()	2.()	3.()	4.()	5.()
ind the mistake and o	correct it:			
The walls of the hou	ses were n	ande of bakes	Market.	, -
People usually slept o				(
There weren't any ta	nes Peonl	e got their wa	s very not at nig	nt. (
There were fashions	on the he	d Thomas	iter from the Nil	e. (
There were fashions				(
I'm working in a proj	ect for not	uses for the fu	iture.	(
uess what it is:		initial to a to	A PUBLICAL IN	BOS 31/8
You can turn this to	get water.		David Car Miller	1
You use these to buil			and provide and	4 9
		Secret makes		
	a house	A 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		(
This is on the top of a		ead		(
This is on the top of a	food or br			(
This is on the top of a You use this to cook We put these panels the sun's heat.	food or broof.	They produce	e electricity using	(

PART (1	
7 These machines can do many things for us. Some of them can t	alk. ()
10 This machine can fly, but it does not have a pilot.	()
They use the wind to produce electricity.	()
100 This car does not use petrol.	()
Write what shape it is:	5
rectangular - round - square - triangular	
The ship's window is	ger than a square
The door isso people can walk through it.	
3 The roof isso snow and rain fall from it.	
The box isso you can put things in it.	
5 In Egypt, we use metal coins.	TO PERSONAL PROPERTY.
B Language Practice	25
Find the mistake and correct it:	72 N 0785
1 A car door made of metal.	10
2 Car windows are making of glass.	()
3 Expensive car seats is made of leather.	(
4 Other car seats are made from plastic.	()
5 There weren't some bedrooms.	(
6 There were any cars in ancient Egypt.	(
7 There was boats in ancient Egypt.	(
8 There were trains in 1900, but there were any TVs.	()
9 I think people would all use electric cars in the future.	()
I think we have more robots in our schools.	()

000	omplete the dialogue with the correct form of will and the verbs
in	brackets:
R	ami : What do you think the world(be) like in 30
	years?
K	amal : No, it
	ami : No? Why not?
	mal : It(be) dirty. People
	(not have) enough food.
R	:But there(be) new ways to make food.
Ka	imal: And there(not be) any gas.
Ra	: We(not need) oil. Cars and planes(use)
	solar energy.
Ka	mal: Oh, yes. The sun.
Ra	the world(be) hotter?
Ka	mal: Yes, it
Ra	: What the temperature in Egypt(be)
	in the summer?
Ka	mal: It may be 55°C in the summer!
Ra	mi : Fifty five degrees in Egypt? That isn't possible!
	Speaking Practice
	10
upply	the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:
R. It's	nat's your pencil case made of?
ם; ו נח	ink expensive car seats are made of leather.
A:	an architect do?
B: An	architect designs buildings.
A: I th	ink we will all use driverless cars in 2050.
	. I think we'll all use electric cars.
A: Are	these keys made of metal?



On land and sea



(A) Vocabulary Practice	25
Tind its correct verb:	5
play - keep - make	
1 manufacture and the second s	
® 12000000000000000000000000000000000000	
®something from recycled plastic	
(4) ENTERIOR STREET, S	
* healthy	
Complete the sentences with the following words:	5
shell - poisonous - ocean - tails - flat	3
The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the	
A stingray is a big, fish.	***************************************
A sea turtle has a hard to protect it.	
® Some sea life, like the Jellyfish, is	
Whales hit with their big	
(3) Guess what it is:	6
1) It can sting you.	- ()
2 It has eight legs.	()
It has a hard shell to protect it.	()
It is poisonous.	()
6 It is the biggest and heaviest sea animal.	

It has big teeth, it is a dangerous sea animal.

Match the words with their meanings: a) get rid of what you do not need 1. environment 2. rubbish b) where we live c) a verb which means use again 3. throw away d) things we do not need, like old paper 4. recycle 5. soil e) the top part of the Earth, where we stand f) what plants grow in 6. cover g) an empty space in something 7. hole h) put something over something else to protect or hide it 8. seed i) a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants 9. ground Answers: 1. () 2.() 3.() 4.() 5.() 6.() 7.() 8.() 9.() Language Practice 25 True or false: You must wash your hands before lunch. You mustn't listen to your parents. 3 You must break the windows at school. You must brush your teeth every day. You mustn't eat fruit and vegetables every day. Fill in the blanks with must or mustn't: 1 Youclean up your room. Yousmoke. 3 You do your homework.

4 You play with fire.

6 You turn the music too loud.
7 You help in the house.

9 You bite nails.

5 You be home on time.

Youannoy your little sister.

10 You brush your teeth three times a day.

1100	
3) Supply the suitable forms of the	verbs in brackets:
A 16 to	nlants carriot grown
0.10	(not / rain), plants (try) to cook, I don't cook the food well (try) to cook, I don't cook the food well.
916	(cat) too much chocolate.
4 If Andy	(do) to bed late,
5 I feel good if you	(VISIC) 1116 9
6 Water even annhan !f	(DOII) ICI
7 Sandy always	(cycle) to work if the weather is got
When I have a test Talways (rev.	ise) wcn.
9 If I	(be) very tired, I always sleep early.
10 My mum always	(become) angry when I am late
Cond	Hima Direction
(C) Speak	king Practice)
Supply the missing parts in the	following mini-dialogues:
1 A: What	on roads?
B: We mustn't play games on ro	ads
2 A: What should	to plant a tree?
B: First, wash an empty plastic p	
200	press the person's number?
R. Yes you should	March 1990 Note: A series transfer the con-
	e shik cours our secure teacher to be a con-
Complete the following dialogu	\ - 1
	plant
	in the garden.
	THE NAME OF THE PARTY OF THE PA
Mariam: Yes, that's right	, look at the ground. It must not
have lots of stones or ot	her plants in it.
Lama : OK. What should I do	?
Mariam: Then, make a small hole	in the soil.
Lama : How deep must it be?	
	ome water in the hole so it is not too dry.
	·····
Lama :	Lucture 2
Lama :	out the seed in the hole and cover it with soil



My future





25

Find its correct verb:

earn - get - travel - pass - make

10

- 1 married
- 2 my exams
- 3 around the world
-jewellery
- 5 money
- Complete the sentences with the following words:



workshops - skills - pottery - culture - colourful

- 1 People started making thousands of years ago in Egypt.
- 2 Some people make pottery in or their own homes.
- 3 You can see thejewellery in markets all over the country.
- (4) It is an important part of Africa's to make baskets.
- 5 Many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional jobs and ______ are still important.
- Complete the sentences with the correct jobs:



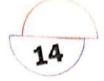
- 1 Ais a person who helps sick people.
- 2 Anis a person who designs machines or engines.
- 3 An is a person who works with numbers.
- 4 A is a woman who works in an office and goes to meetings.
- 5 A _____ is a person who looks after people's teeth.
- 6 Ais a person who writes books.
- 7 Ais a person who flies a plane.
- 8 A is a person who takes photos.
- 9 Anis a person who designs buildings.
- 10 A is a person who studies science.

B Language Practice

	20
1 Reorder the words to make sentences with a relative pronoun:	
1 a - teacher - who - students - A - is - person - teaches.	4
1 a - teacher - who - students - A - 13 Person	
2 scientist - is - a - who - science - A - studies - person.	

sperson - a - pilot - flies - A - is - who - a - plane.	
4 who - A - person - a - photographer - photographs - is - takes.	······
2 Complete the sentences with the correct question tags:	10
1 Mr Said is from Qalubia,?	
2 The car isn't in the garage,?	
3 You are John,?	
4 She went to the library yesterday,	?
5 He didn't know me,?	
6 Cars pollute the environment,?	8 p. 3
7 Mr Waleed has been to Scotland recently,	***************************************
The trip is very expensive,?	
9 He won't tell her the truth,?	
10 Huda had a red car,?	
Linear to the company of the second of the s	6
3) Find the mistake and correct it:	
1 She is collecting stickers, hasn't she? (***************************************
We often watch TV in the afternoon, don't you? (***************************************
3 You have cleaned your bike, have you? (10400****************
4 John and Tom don't like maths, do he? (***************************************
6 Peter playing handball yesterday, didn't he? (***************************************
6 They aren't going home from school, aren't they?)





Supply the mi	ssing parts	in the following	mini-dialogues:

⑤ A:	an architect?
B: An architect is a person who designs bu	ulldings.
2 A: What	·····
B: A marine biologist is a person who stude animals in it.	lies the ocean and the plants and
3 A:	about your job?
B: My research helps to protect the plants the best thing.	s and animals in the ocean. That's
4 A: You visit some interesting places,	
B: Yes, I do.	
⑤ A:	
B: I really want to be an architect.	William Wilding State Older?
⑥ A:	Vour life ho like in ton
B: In ten years' time, I want to have a goo	d job
7 A: Where will you go if you take a holida	y this year?
B;	





Mew Hello!



2021



Final Revision





) Final Revision

- Vocabulary
 Vocabulary Exercises
- Language
 Language Exercises

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والقواعد مصحوبة بتدريبات مجابة على كل جزئية.



Final Revision





Key Vocabu	lary	ىية	مفردات الرئيس	JI)	
adventure story	قصة مغامرة Y	hope (d)	يأمل	sailor	
aquarium لمائية	معرض الأحياء ا	move (d) to	ينتقل إلى	school can	
band	فرقة موسيقية	museum	متحف	درسة sports cen	مقصف (كانتين) المد
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	musical instru	ument		مرکز ریاضی tre
dolphin	الدولفين	musician	آلة موسيقية	storm	علصفة
exhibition			موسيقار/عازف	swimming	حمام سباحة pool
football stadiu	معرض	nervous	عصبي/متوتر	trumpet	
	ستاد كرة القدم	planetarium a	مبنى القبة السماوي	weekend	بوق عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
funfair	الملاهي	prefer (red)	يفضل	wheel	
had	Import	ant adjectives	N. Marian Carlo	صفات ها	عجلة سيارة/ ملاه
bad fantastic	ئيس	great	عظيم	ОК	لا بأس به
iditastic	رائع	interesting	شيق	terrible	فظیع/رهیب/سیئ جدًا
class!	Types	of music	وسيقى	أنواع المو	مطيع ارهيب اسيى
classical	كلاسيكي	opera	الأوبرا	rock	موسيقي الروك
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	рор	موسيقى البوب	traditiona	

Prepos	itions & Language Express	ions حروف الجر والتعبيرات اللغوية
look for		docido
frightened		يقرر أن help with
ride on the big wheel يركب عجلة الملاهي		share with يشارك مع
plan to t		meet ▶ my best friend اقابل صديقي المفضل
have >a	maths lesson لديه حصة رياضيات	go ▶ bowling يذهب للعب البولينج
do 🕨	activities يؤدى أنشطة	
GO P	homework يؤدى الواجب المدرسي	ما نوع؟ What type of?

Key Vocabulary	ىفردات الرئيسية	الم
achieve (d) ينجز/پحقق	design (ed) ممم	square metre
amazing شمیه/منه	entrance مدخل	يز مربع مثال
bridge جسر/کوبری	amous مشهور	sunny
موقف السيارات car park	glass floor الزجاج	suspension
century (مام)	guide book دليل الإرشاد	tower
city centre وسط المدينة	historical objects أشياء تاريخية	treasure jii
column sage	on display معروض/في العرض	رض تلفزیونی TV show
منافسة/مسابقة competition	مؤدب polite	valuable ينم/نو قيمة
بلد/دولة country/countries	protect (ed) يحمى	welcome (d) برحب بـ
cross (ed) يعبرايمر على	space مساحة/فراغ/فضاء	writer
	Question words with "How"	
ما عرض/اتساع؟ ي How wide?	ما عمق؟ 9 How deep?	اعمر؟ ! How old
ما طول/كم العدة؟ ? How long	ما ارتفاع؟ How high?	How many? 5 such
Adjecti	ves	الصفات
crowded مزيحم	ال high	near بربب
easy	المنخفض low	noisy الضوضاء
empty فارغ	modern حدیث/عصری	quiet
far بغيد	narrow ضيق	wide e

Prepositions & Lang	يية uage Expressions	وفالجر والتعبيرات اللغو
a view of منظر لـ	examples of امثلة لـ	reason for
at sunset في وقت الغروب	far from نعيد من	refer to
يقارن بـ	(be) able to + inf. يكون قادرًا أن	similar to
مزىدم بـ	popular with محبوب لدی	space for
easy for سهل لـ	فخور بـ	the capital of
have a holiday	get یقضی إجازة	busier

Key Vocabula	у	سية	بفردات الرئيد	اله	
adventure sport 5,0	رياضة مغاه	guide	مرشد/دلیل	raily	خط سکة حدید vay line
British	بريطاني	important	pao/pla	skill	معارة
challenge	تحدي	newspaper	جريدة	tent	
complete (d)	يكمل	online	عبر الإنترنت	tow	
date 🐤	تاريخ (اليو	photo album	ألبوم صور		
equipment	معدات	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	trar	المواصلات Isport
Water sport	الماثية ك	الرياضات	Mountain	n spo	الرياضات الجبلية rts
diving equ	الغطس/الغ	windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	5	تسلق الصخور k climbing
kayaking	التجديف	mountain bil بى الجبل	king ركوب الدراجات ة	Quinter and a second	الارتحال/التجوال kking
sailing	الإبحار	mountain cli	mbing تسلق الجبال	zip	lining الانزلاق بالحبل
	Weathe	er words	طقس	مات ال	15
Noun الاسم	Adject	الصفة tive	Noun	الاسه	Adi
cloud محابة	cloud	غائم ۷		عاصفة	الصفة Adjective
مطر rain	rainy	ممطر		سمش	stormy
ثلج wons	snow		wind	رياح	sunny مشمس windy کثیر الریاح/عاصف

Prepos	itions & Langu	age Expres	sions a	حروف الجر والتعبيرات اللفويا
a form of	1117	نوع/شكل من	go trekkin	
by the be	ach	بجوار الشاطئ	get to	يعرف غبر عبر يومان إلى
dry with	PER CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF	ب خففی	on time	يمن إلى في الوقت المحدد
different		مختلف عن	stay with	يېقى/يقيم مع
for lunch		على الغداء	would lik	
look + ac	lj.	يبدو	have >	a guide يحصل على دليل
take >	a challenge	يأخذ تحديثا	keep >	warm يېقى دافقًا
	swimming	ينهب للسباحة		a photo album يعد اليوم صور
sailing down				يعد البوم صور a prioto album
go trekking	لنيل	يذهب للإبحار في ا	make 🕨	•
	trekking in the mountains يرتحل في الجبال			a mistake يرتكب خطأ

ulary		مفردات الرئيسية	AL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY	
ar	electricity	الكهرباء /	statue	لاثمت
	lamp	لمبة/ مصباح	tap	صنبورا حنفية
	oven	فرن	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي
	robot	إنسان آلي	technology	تكنولوجيا
	roof	السطح (سطح المبني)	traditional	تقليدى
- Marian		كنبة	village	قرية
	C STOCKER WARREN	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية كا	wallet	منفظة نقود
			wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
Shapes	Space		الأشكال	
مستطيل الشكل	round	مستدير الشكل	square	مربع
	ls	عام حادث	المواد الذ	
قطن	metal	معدن	stone	بجر
زجاج	paper	ورق	wood	شب بش
جلد	plastic	بلاستيك	wool	نو ف
	مستطیل الشکل Materia قطن قطن	ar سیارة بدون سائد ا سیارة بدون سائد ا سم توضیحی ا oven ا oven ا robot ا roof ا ound ا solar pane ا solar pane ا space Shapes Tound Materials metal ا جاج paper	ar سیارة بدون سائد المبة/ مصباح المبة/ مصباح المبة/ مصباح المبة/ مصباح المبة/ مصباح المبة/ مصباح المبئد ال	ar الكهرباء electricity سيارة بدون سان tap لمبة/ مصباح lamp رسم توضيحى tap رسم توضيحى doven مصباح oven deب robot انسان آلى robot السطح (سطح المبنى) rof (ستائر traditional willage willage willage did بدون طيار sofa مساحة/ فراغ/ فضاء solar panels سيارة كهربائية wind turbines (كالله كالشكل space الأشكال space مستدير الشكل space مستدير الشكل round مستطيل الشكل square المواد الخام معدن metal معدن stone وقا paper قان wood

Prepositions & Language Expres	
for holiday	live in
important for ا	on holiday الإجازة
be ▶ born in	sleep > on the roof
design buildings یصمم مبانی	paint houses مبدهان العنازل
get • electricity يحصل على الكمرباء	use > 3D printers

Key Vocabu	lary	سية	مفردات الرئي		
air	هوا،	healthy	صحی	rubbish	قمامة
brave	شجاع	land	اليابسة	save (d)	نقذ
danger	خطر	nature reserve	محملة طبيعية	sea life	الحياة البحرية
environment	البيلة	ocean	محيط	seed	بذرة
fisherman	صياد سمك	planet	كوكب	skeleton	میکل عظمی
fishing line	صنارة صيد	poisonous	سام	soil	تربة
frighten (ed)	يخيف	protect (ed)	يحمى	sting	يلدغ
gloves	قفازات	recycle (d)	یعید تصنیع	throw away	یرمی بعیدا
headphones	سماعات الرأس	respect (ed)	يحترم	worried	قلق
	Sea an	imals	البحرية	الحيوانات	
coral reef	الشعب المرجانية	shark	سمكة القرش	whale	حوت
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	stingray	لسمكة اللامفة		294
octopus	خطبوط	turtle	للحفاة بحرية	1	

Prepositions	& Langu	age Expres	وية sions	ر والتعبيرات اللغ	حروف الح
a piece of	1	fill with	The state of the s	share with	يشارك
agree with	يتفق مع	find out		swim away	يسبح بعيدًا
angry with	غاضب من	hit with	يضرب بـ	take off	يظع (ملابس)
bad for	ضار بـ	in danger	فی خطر	throw into	يلقى في
cover with	یغطی بــ	most of	معظم	use for	يستخدم ك
dangerous for	خطير على	protect from	يحمى من	be ▶ in danger	يكون في خطر
die from	بموت بسبب	pull to/or	يجنب لـ nto	catch ▶ fish	يصطاد سمكنا
do > activity	100	يؤدى نشاط	have > a	test	لديه اختبار
lose ▶ a tooth	of contract (يفقد سنـًا من الأسنار	recycle ▶ p	lastic	يعيد تصنيع البلا
stay ▶ in the e				eft/ right	ينظريسارًا/ يمي



Key Vocabu	ilary	المفردات الرئيسية					
a marine biolo	gist عالم الأحياء الب	earn (ed)	يربح مالًا	record (ed)	بالمار		
adult	بالغ	education	تعليم	research	رماد شاء		
app	تطبيق/برنامج		موتورا محرك	results	ينع		
businesses	أعمال تجارية		أمراض	the countryside	ربع		
	ملون/زاهي الألر		مجوهرات	skills	عارات		
computer programmes برامج الكمبيوتر		laboratory	معمل	social media صل الاجتماعي			
culture	ثقافة	local	محلى	changes	ببرات		
cure	علاج	machine	آلة	injury	عابة		
disappear (ed)		pottery	الفخار	volunteer (ed)	نطوع		
dream	حلم	prediction	تنبؤ	workshop	رشة		
arcon.	Jobs			الوظائف			
accountant	محاسب	computer pro	ogrammer مېرمج کمبيوتر	pilot	طيار		
architect &	مهندس معمار	dentist	طبيب أسنان	scientist	الم		
businessman	رجل أعمال	engineer	مهندس مدني	teacher	علم		
businesswoman		photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	writer	الب		

Prepos	iti	ons & Lang	uage Expre	SSIUIS		لتعبيرات اللغو	
advice fo	or		نصيحة ال	good at			يد في
design >	•	an app / a video game يصمم تطبيقا الكترونيا/لعبة فيديو		make	•	our lives easier عل حياتنا أسهل	
	a building	يصمم مبنى	pottery			صنع الفخار	
do	>	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	pass	>	an exam	جتاز اختبازا
earn	•	money	يكسب مالا	program	>	computers	برمج الكمبيوتر
find	•	cures for	يجد علاجات ا	study	>	science	درس العلوم
get	•	married	يتزوج	teach	>	students	علم الطلاب
look after	•	sick people	يعتنى بالمرضى	score	>	a goal	سجل/يحرز هدفتا

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

O On tathet rook r	is to the management of	and we rade and	
		and we rode on the big	
ØWhen we went to	o the	we saw many beautiful fis	d)stadium
THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T	11301116411		
We enjoyed ours	selves läst holidav. I	twae	d) aquanium
ajugiy	p) poring	-1	
o reopie use a	to cross	Wer a river	d)terrible
a) bridge	b)fridge	-14-	
My sister likes the	ne sea, so she woul	d like to try	d) tunnel
	nluekkind	el entit	
Kayaking is a/a	nspor	t Saming	d) zip lining
a) mountain	b) water	cleare	
Cotton, glass, wood and wool are		c)cave	d)air
a) subjects	b)sports		
O People put	across wi	indows to keep light out.	d) materials
a) carpets	b)rugs	c) curtains	
The	is one of the mo	ost dangerous sea animals i	d) sheets
a) crab	h) shark	c) jellyfish	n the ocean.
O A/An	is a big flot fi	c) Jellytish sh and it lives in the ocean.	d) turtle
a) stingray	Is a big, flat its	on and it lives in the ocean.	D
M An architect in	b)turtie	c) octopus	d) coral reef
a) dosi-		buildings.	d) builds
a) designs	Dines	c) writes	
		people's teeth	d)up
a)at		c) after	ајар
Most children	n are	of dogs.	d) good
a) brave	b)bad	c) frightened	
Cairo's street	s are very		d) high
210000	Lifor		
13 When we go	camping, we usua	ally sleep in a	d) flat
a)room	b)bed	c) tent	(9

To save water.	we should repair old	***************************************	
- Louisne	b) tapes	c) caps	d) tips
•	ro things which the 11	suetmen age:	
	a to produce the control of the cont	-	d) Sea birds
A marine	is a person w	ho studies the ocean	and the plants
- mineria in it			and
. La significat	b) dentist	c) biologist	d) research
@ We should	our parents	and teachers	
	(a) cink	Clicabear	d) hate
There is a lot o	f in the e	arly morning. People	can't see well.
a) for	b) wind	c) rain	d) storm
A In the future r	eonle will all use		
- I alactrical	b) electronic	c) electricity	d) electric
~ 1	is an area of land in w	thich animais and pia	nts are protected
2 A	h) rubbish bin	c) ground	d) soil
a) nature reser	my exams	so that I can go to un	iversity.
nope triat i	b) pass	c) fail	d) get
The piane is a r	nusical		
The plant is a r	h) machine	c) instrument	d) tool
The Equation M	Juseum is full of a lot of	of objec	ts.
The Egyptian iv	b) adventurous	a) natural	d) historical
a) ugiy	(for example, the	Atlantic) is bigger tha	n a sea.
			d) lake
	b) sea		
		ound in	
	b) shape	V.50	d) sheep
	is someon'e who c		
	b) officer		d) fisherman
Technology will	our live:	s easier and more int	eresting.
CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE	b) take	c) make	d) leave
		occident. She can't w	alk.
a) armchair	b) bike	c) sofa	d) wheelchail
		C1501a	



1. Past simple tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

Form

التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- Mona watched a nice film last night.
- They had a fantastic weekend in the aquarium.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

Past simple Expressions

yesterday منذ ago - in the past - أمس in the past - في الماضي - in the past منذ in + منذ (in 2010)

2. Questions

1. Yes/No questions:

Helping/Auxiliary verb + subject + complement?

- Were you at the zoo yesterday? Yes, I was.
- 2. Wh-questions:

Q. word + helping verb + subject + complement?

• When did you go to school?

Unit 8

Adjectives	arative and superlative of Comparative	مقارنة الحقات Superlative
Short adjectives	er + than + the Amazon.	the + الصفة القصيرة + est - Ali is the tallest boy in our clas
Long	more/less + الصفة الطويلة + than	the most/the least + الصفة الطويلة
adjectives	- The lion is more dangerous than the dog.	- This is the least popular book in the library.

PART 1

Unit 9

1. "going to" for future plans

اسم مفرد (is not (isn't) + going to + inf.

You, We, They, اسم جمع are not (aren't)

- I am going to visit my grandfather on Friday.
- My sister is not going to **go** kayaking.
- Are your brothers going to **try** diving? Yes, they are. No, they aren't.
- When is he going to try trekking?
- He's going to try trekking this weekend.

2. Reflexive pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة ومفعولها متماثلين:

الفاعل	i de la compania del compania del compania de la compania del compania de la compania de la compania del compania de la compania de la compania de la compania del compania	We	You	You
الضمير المنعكس	myself	ourselves	yourself	yourselves
	بنفسى/نفسى	بانفسنا/انفسنا	بنفسك/نفسك	بانفسكم/انفسكم
الفاعل	He	She	lt	They
الضمير المنعكس	himself	herself	itself	themselves
	بنفسه/نفسه	انفسفا/افسفن	بنفسه/نفسه (مفرد غیر عاقل)	بانفسهم/انفسهم

- I did my homework (by) myself.
- Ali and I hurt ourselves with a knife.
- You all should do your homework (by) yourselves.

1. is/are made of

Subject + is/ are + made of (material)

- . The sofa is made of leather.
- . The cushions are made of cotton.

السؤال Question

What + is/ are + subject + made of?

- What is the sofa made of?
- What are the cushions made of?

2. There was/ There were

- نستخدم (there was/ were) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجو**د شيء/أ**شياء في الماضي.

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.
- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

3. Making predictions about the future

Subject + will/won't + (inf.) +

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be robot teachers in the future.

Unit 11

If/When → present simple → present simple

- If/ When we heat water, it evaporates.
- تستخدم مع الحقائق الثابتة والعادات.

• I feel tired when/if it's late.



2. must/mustn't should/shouldn't

Obligation: الإلزام

must + inf. يجب الا mustn't + inf. يجب الا

- We must save our planet. - We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.

النصيحة Advice:

should + inf. يجب الا shouldn't + inf. يجب الا

- We should recycle more materials. - We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

Unit 12

غمير الوصل (who) ممير الوصل (Relative Pronoun "who"

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.

2. Question Tags السؤال المذيل

السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يأتى في نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتى قبله (,) و غرضه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
 يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبتًا إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفيًا إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة).

- -You like meat, don't you?
- -She doesn't play chess well, does she?
- -He studied his lessons well, didn't he?

3. The First Conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.

lf/When → present simple → subject + will + inf.

Subject + will + inf.

if/when

present simple

Examples:

- If/When Igo to university, Ill study maths.
- I'll study maths if/when Igo to university.

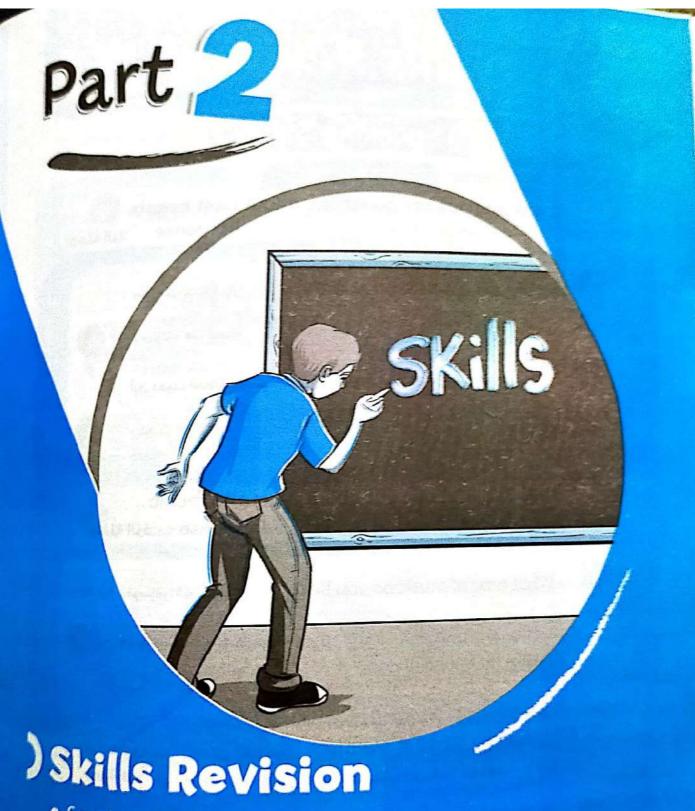
Language EXercises

Choose the	correct answer from	m a, b, c or d:	
- Histened	to music three days	······································	
1 - 70	W) last	c) next	d) yesterday
a) ago	Mona like pop mu	sic?	yesterday
	MITIAS	- 0003	d) Do
a) Is	to play the pian	o when he was young.	
	UI lealiis	-/ ICalli	d) learned
a) learning	is small. I want a	one.	
	DI DIUUCI	-, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -	d) as big
a) biggest	imbing is	sport of all.	
6 Mountain Ci	gorous	b) the most dan	gerous
a) more dan		d) most danger	ous
c) dangerou	crowded that	n Aswan.	
G Cairo is	b) the most	c) the least	d) more
a) the	When when	1 to clean it	?
You didn't cle	an your room. When	ng c) will you	d) did you
1 1/01/	Di ale you go		
Imad, make	a cup of to	c) herself	d) itself
a) yourself	b) himself	Everyone enjoyed	tnere.
The trip to Hui	rghada was excluing	Everyone enjoyed c) yourselves	d) themselves
a) himself	D) Hersen		
My shirt	cotton.	c) made of) is made of
a) made	b) is made		
There	any cars in ancier	c) weren't) were
The state of the s			
Olf I sleep late, I a	lways tir	b) will become	
a) become			-116
am going to b	ecome	d) became n the weather is bad. It c) should	's dangerous.
WYouwalk in	the mountains whe	n the weather d)	have to
musi	h) milstri		
four father's got	a green car,	b) hasn't he	
ish't he		d) hasn't your father	
O We sour fathe		d) nasir cycles	
a) to go	r It if it doesn't rain to	morrow.	joing
90	b) went	c) will go	(15)
			NA STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PA

PART

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

Read and correct the undermies	(do)
A: Do you play tennis? B: Yes, Idid.	(who)
This is my friend when won the competition.	(went)
Hegoes to Alexandria with his family last weekens.	(meet)
and didn't met my best friend yesterday.	onger than)
The Nile River islonger the Amazon.	2000
The older museum in Cairo opened in 1835.	(oldest)
One of themore beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance	e. (most)
3 Basmala is beautiful than Malak. (mor	e Deadthul)
Tamer drew a picture yourself.	(himself)
The bird hurthimself and flew away.	(tself)
We're going visit Alexandria Library tomorrow.	(to visit)
You are going to go diving in the Red Sea?	(Are you)
My watch is made <u>from</u> plastic and metal.	(of)
Therearen't any pupils at school last week.	(weren't)
1 think wewould use electric cars in the future.	(will)
There wasn't some tree here last year.	(a)
If it will rain, we get water.	(rains)
1 feel tiredwhile it's late.	(when)
Youmust play in the middle of the road. It's too dangerous.	(mustn't)
Mr. Waleed is the teacherwhich teaches us English.	(who)
② Youmust throw rubbish on the ground.	(mustn't)
② Idon't pass my exams if I don't work hard.	(won't)
② I'mgo to learn a new language next year.	(going)
There wasn't a school twenty years ago, wasit?	(here)
	(don't have)
You <u>have</u> a brother, do you? He came to school late <u>although</u> he didn't catch the bus.	(because)
He came to scribor late attributed the didn't catch the bus.	(although)
I wore my coatbecause it wasn't cold.	



- Speaking Skills
 Speaking Skills Exercises
- Writing Skills

مراجعة عامة على أهم مهارات التحدث والكتابة مصحوبة بتدريبات مجابة على كل جزئية.



Skills Revision

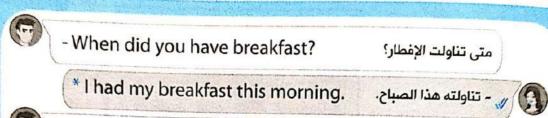


Speaking Skills

Unit 7

1. Ask and answer questions about past events

Situation ما يقال في هذا الموقف Response حملة الرد



- Where did you go last weekend? أين ذهبت العطلة الماضية؟

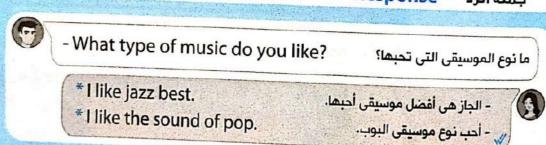
* I went to the museum.

] - ذهبت إلى المتحف،



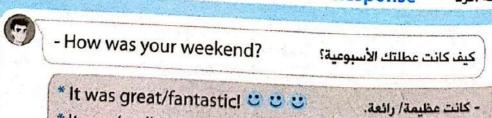
2. Ask and answer about favourite music

Situation ما يقال في هذا الموقف Response جملة الرد



3. Responding to past events

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف الرد على أحداث في الماضي Response جملة الرد



* It was (really/ very) interesting. 🐸 🙂

- كان شيقًا حدًا،

* It was terrible! 🙁 🙁 🙁 » - كانت فظيعة.

1. Ask and answer about measurements

ما يقال فى هذا الموقف

Response

حملة الرد



- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road? ما طول طريق القاهرة الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟

* It is 220 kilometres long.

ر - إنه ۲۲۰ كيلو مترا.





- How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge?

ما عرض كوبرى تحيا مصر؟

* It's about 67.36 metres wide.

🧷 - حوالی ۲۷٫۳٦ متر.



- How deep is Lake Baikal?

ما عمق بحيرة بالكال؟

* It is 1, 642 metres deep.

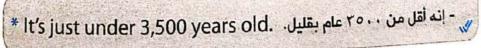
📞 - إنها ١٦٤٢ مترًا.





- How old is Luxor Temple?

ما عمر معبد الأقصر؟







ما عدد الناس التي تعيش في القاهرة؟ How many people live in Cairo? -

* More than 20 million people live in Cairo. e in Cairo. - أكثر من ۲۰ مليون شخص. 🚜





2. How to ask and answer questions to make comparisons

كيفية السؤال والإجابة لممل مقارنات

Situation

ما يقال فى هذا الموقف

Response

حملة الرد



- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid? انى هرم هو الأطول، الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أم الهرم الأحمر؟

* I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller. پ - اعتقد أن المرم الأكبر بالجيزة أطول.





 Which building is taller, the Shanghai Tower in China or the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait?

- أي مبنى هو الأطول، برج شنغهاي بالصين أم برج الحمراء بالكويت؟



* I think the Shanghai Tower in China is taller. پ - اعتقد ان برج شنغهای بالصین اطول،

3. Asking about opinion

Situation

ما يقال فى هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Arabic? أى مادة هي أصعب في رأيك، اللغة العربية أم اللغة الإنجليزية؟

* In my opinion, English is the most difficult of all. ﴿ - في رأيي اللغة الإنجليزية هي الأصعب على الإطلاق.





What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge?

ما رأيك في كوبري تحيا مصر؟

* I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt. - اعتقد أن كوبرى تحيا مصر هو أعظم مشروع في مصر.



Making and responding to suggestions عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها



Saying what things are made of

الاخبار عن ما صنعت الأشياء منه

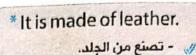
Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response حملة الرد

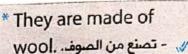


- What is the wallet made of? مم تصنع المحفظة؟





- What are the socks made of? مم تصنع الجوارب؟







- What is the tablet made of? مم يصنع التابلت؟

* It is made of glass and plastic.



🥓 - يصنع من الزجاج والبلاستيك.

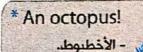
Unit 11

1. Describing a sea animal Description الوصف

وصف حيوان بحرى Response جملة الرد



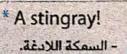
- It can swim fast. It's got eight legs. يمكنه السباحة بسرعة. لديه ثماني أرجل.







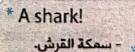
- If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water! لو علمت بقدوم سمكة قرش، تقفرُ خارج الماء.







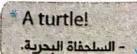
- It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. انه واحد من أخطر الحيوانات البحرية في المحيط.







- It has a hard shell to protect it. لديها صدفة صلبة لحمايتها.







2. What must/ mustn't you do in/ on ...? ما يجب وما لا يجب فعله فى ...؟

We mustn't play games on roads.

لا يجب أن نلعب على الطرق.

We must play games in the sports centres.

يجِب أن تلعب في المراكز الرياضية.

We must be quiet in the classroom.

بجب أن نهداً في الفصل.

3. Asking and giving instructions طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

ما يقال في هذا المعقد

6	1. What should I do to plant a tred ان أفعل لزراعة شجرة؟	e? ماذا يجب	
	* First, * Second, * Then, * Next, * Finally,	- أولًا - ثانيًا - ثم - التالى - واخير ًا	3
9	2. Should I (water it now)? أن أرويها الآن؟	هل يجب	

Unit 12

Talking about your future plans

الحديث عن خططك في المستقبل

Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.

Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.

Inten years' time, I'll be married.

PART (2)

Speaking Skills Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

0

Hanaa : Hello, how are you?

Dalia: I'm fine, thanks. What about you?

Hanaa : I'm good. So what are you going to do this weekend?

Dalia: Well, on Saturday, I'm going to go to the park.

Hanaa : When are you going to come back from the park?

Dalia: We're going to come back at 7:00 p.m.

Hanaa : Are you going anywhere after dinner?

Dalia: No, I don't think I'm going anywhere after dinner.

Hanaa : I see. How about watching a film together?

Dalia : Well, you know I want some rest. I have much work.

0

Tamer : Hey, Sarah. How are you?

Sarah : Good. I heard you are from a big city.

Tamer : That's right. I was born there and I lived in the city for many years.

Sarah : Cool. What is the most interesting thing about your city?

Tamer : Well, it has many interesting things, but the most interesting thing

is probably the stadium.

Sarah : Well, that's really cool. So you like sports so much.

Tamer : Of course. Football is my favourite sport.

Sarah: What is the most beautiful place in your city?

Tamer : In my opinion, it's the park. That area has the best views of the city.

Sarah: Wow. It sounds like the place I would like to see.

samar :So we're talking about holidays. Are there any good holidays that you remember?

Hadeer: Well, one of my favourite holidays was when I went to Greece two years ago.

Samar : Wow, Greece. How is it?

Hadeer: Greece is a very beautiful country. The houses and the beaches are so beautiful.

Samar : So what did you do in Greece?

Hadeer: I relaxed at the swimming pool and the beaches. At night, I went shopping.

Samar : Oh, that sounds interesting. Who did you go with?

Hadeer: I went with my mum, dad and brother.

Samar : And how long did you stay there?

Hadeer: We stayed for three weeks.

0

Nessim: So Karam, tell me about your favourite music!

Karam : I think my favourite music is jazz.

Nessim: Why do you like jazz music?

Karam : Hove it because it makes me happy.

Nessim: So your parents listen to it.

Karam : Yes, we all like jazz music. What about you?

Nessim: I like traditional music.

Karam : What musical instrument do you like?

Nessim: I like the drums so much. And you?

ldon't feel the same as you about that. I like the guitar.







1. How to write about "Your last weekend"

My last weekend

Last weekend, I went to the funfair. I went with my family. We went there by car. My father bought us the tickets. There were a lot of interesting games. I rode on the big wheel. I felt afraid but it was fun. My brother went on a ride. He was really happy. My little sister swam in a small plastic swimming pool. My father and mother went for a walk. We all had a wonderful time. We decided to go there again very soon. We went back home late at night. It was fun.

2. How to write about "A terrible/ fantastic day"

A terrible day

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school. I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother was hot. We took him to hospital and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night and I couldn't do my homework. What a terrible day I had!



1. How to write about "An important building"

The Cairo Tower

Egypt has many amazing places. You can visit these places in Cairo like the Cairo Tower and the Egyptian Museum. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

2. How to write about "The Tahya Masr Bridge"

The Tahya Masr Bridge

Egypt is a great country. It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.

3. How to write about "Historical places in Egypt"

Historical places in Egypt

Egypt has a lot of historical places which tourists like to visit. These places are in many cities like Cairo, Giza, Aswan and Luxor. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of historical objects. They are the most valuable treasures. The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. There are other places like the Valley of the Kings in Luxor, the Karnak Temple and Habu Temple.





1. How to write about "Your plan for tomorrow"

My plan for tomorrow

We should all plan for our future. I also planned for tomorrow. Tomorrow will be a busy day with lots of things to do. Firstly, I'm going to get up at six as usual, then I'm going to have my breakfast before I go to school. I'm going to meet my friends before lessons start. I go home at one o'clock. My father is going to take us to Sinai. I'm going to go diving there. My sister would like to try kayaking. My brother is going to go rock climbing. I hope it will be a wonderful trip.

2. How to write about "An adventure sport"

My adventure sport

I like adventure sports. There are lots of adventure sports like rock climbing, windsurfing and zip lining. I like mountain biking. I liked it many years ago when my father bought me my first bike. Today, I am going to go mountain biking. So I get dressed and phone my best friend. He is the person who I go mountain biking with. We go to a forest with mountains. After my friend arrives at my house, we make sure that all of the equipment is safe on the bike. With water bottles filled and bikes ready to go, we are off. It makes us feel happy.





1. How to write about "Homes in ancient Egypt"

Homes in ancient Egypt

The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago. They were clever and invented a lot of things. Their homes were really traditional. The walls of the homes were made of bricks. They were very strong. The doors were made of wood. There weren't any bedrooms. They slept on the roofs of their homes because the weather was very hot at night. They painted their homes in white and the doors in red. They were really great. There was a kitchen in each home. They used to make delicious food. They ate broad beans for breakfast.

2. How to write about "Your future predictions"

My future predictions

In the future, we will have very small computers in our clothes. We have the technology now. So I think it will also be in our clothes. At school, I think computers will be our teachers, but we should always have teachers. I think we won't live under the ground. I think we won't live on other planets, too. In the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity. They will be better for the environment. They will be very fast.





1. How to write about "Keeping our environment clean"

Keeping our environment clean

It's important to live healthy life. The environment is the place where we all live. We must keep it clean and healthy. When plastic stays in the environment, there is a big problem. Some of the plastic is about 100 years old! Every year, many sea animals die from plastic. We must try to use other materials like paper and glass. We must use our shopping bags more than once. We mustn't throw them away. We mustn't stop trying using them. We must keep our planet clean. We must save it!

2. How to write about "Recycling"

Recycling

Materials have many different uses. Recycling materials is very important for us. We must find a new use for old plastic. There are many good ideas for recycling plastic. We can make pots to feed birds from old bottles. We can make kitchen containers. We can make plastic pencil cases, too. We mustn't throw it away. A lot of animals and birds die from poisonous plastic in the sea and on land. We mustn't stop trying old materials because this is very useful for us.

3. How to write about "A story you like"

A story I like

Reading is a very useful hobby. I like reading stories. My favourite story is *Robinson Crusoe*. It's by Daniel Defoe. It's about a sailor who lived on an island alone for many years because his ship sank into the sea. The main character is Robinson Crusoe who made a home for himself. He planted wheat and made his food. He made a boat and could catch a lot of fish to eat. He caught goats and made cheese from their milk. He could make his clothes. The story teaches us to depend on ourselves.



1. How to write about "Your dream job"

My dream job

My name's Kareem. I'm twelve years old. When I grow up, I'd like to be a teacher like my father. He works in a big school in Benha. A teacher is a person who teaches students. Although teaching is tiring, it's very interesting. It helps our country to be great. A teacher helps students to achieve their dreams and get the job they dream of. I like it because I want to help students to learn new things. It's an interesting job.

2. How to write about "Your future plans"

My future plans

My name's Tamer. I'm twelve years old. I'm a student at a preparatory school in Giza. I always think about my future and make plans for it. When I leave school, I'd like to join the university. When I go to university, I want to study medicine. I'd like to get a good job in the future. I'd like to have my own clinic and help the poor. When I get married, I'm going to have two children, a boy and a girl. I'll look after them very well. In five years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car. I'm going to have a modern car. I hope I'll achieve my dreams.









2021



Ongoing Assessment & Exams





) Ongoing Assessment

- 1) Lessons dictation املاء خاص بکل درسین.

- 2) Unit quiz
- ٢- نموذج اختبار قصير خاص بكل وحدة.
- ٣- اختبارات تراكمية (شهرية) خاصة بكل وحدتين. Cumulative tests



Unit 7 Quiz

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c	or d:	10)
0 l my	best friend two hours a	ago.	SB
a) had	b) played	c) met	d) went
② Let's go on the	e big wheel at the	this weeker	nd! WB
a) valley	b) stadium	c) funfair	d) aquarium
◎ I loved the fish	n, but I didn't see any wh	nales at the	
	b) museum		
(1) It was great a	t the	n won 2-0!	(WB)
a) football sta	adium b) bowling	c) planetariun	n d) funfair
	ot about the Earth and th		
a) valley			
The balls are	very heavy at the		WB
a) funfair		c) museum	d) bowling alley
Mum likes pl	aying sports, but she do	es not like	sports.
	b) listening		d) watching
	you do last weekend	1?	SB
a) do	b) does	c) did	d) were
	got a phone? B: Yes, I h	ave.	SB
a) I have			d) You have
	le my team lo	st 5-2.	WB
a) although		c) so	d) but
Read and corre	ect the underlined wor	ds:	5
1 Do you liste	n to music yesterday?		(SB
You can play	a musical instrument?	a deca	() (SB)
What did yo	uhad for breakfast this	morning?	() SB
	ou last go to the aquariu	Vol.	() SB
⑤ Did what yo			() SB
<u> </u>			



Unit 8 Quiz

Assuit is not a ver	ry big		The auto
a) city	b) tower	c) pyramid	d) bridge
a) empty	some more water. Thi	is bottle is c) tall	d) old
Be careful you do	n't hit your head on t	he door. It is very	Little Company
A STATE OF THE STA	D) nign	C) OW	4) 1
a) deep	angry because all the s b) empty	tudents were very	
We can't swim a	cross the river here b	c) long	d) noisy
		Charren	1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -
	ways very busy at this	time. Don't go no	ow or it will be
a) crowded	b) low	a) (
	b) opinion		
	s higherb) or the Am	-\ C.	ro, d) and
w/longer	b) longer than	-) 1 -	d) long
u) bigger	b) noisier the underlined wo	The second section of the second	d) faster
Δ A h	Come to school yest	rds:	
Anmed did not	vest	erday but he was	ill. ()
Anmed did not My sister didn't	like the book, and I	oved it	
wy grandmoth	like the book, <u>and</u> I l er is <u>oldest</u> person in r and <u>hot</u> than Germ	loved it. I my family	() ()



Cumulative Test 1 (Based On Units 7 & 8)





- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- How many people helped to build the Tahya Masr Bridge?

a) 40.

b) 400.

c) 4,000.

- **d)** 40,000.
- ② How long did it take to finish it?
 - a) 32 months.

- b) 23 months.
- c) 13 months.
- d) 30 months.
- In which month did they open it in 2019?
 - a) In April.

b) In March.

c) In May.

d) In June.

- How long is it?
 - a) 514 m.

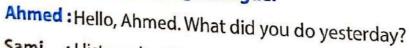
b) 450 m.

c) 540 m.

d) 504 m.

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Sami : I listened to (1).....

Ahmed: Really! Do (2)..... music?

: Yes, of course.

Ahmed: | (5)...... like jazz.

Sami : Jazz is not my favourite.

Ahmed: Who's your favourite musician? Sami : Marvin Allstar.



C Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

a) helpless



The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM), also known as the Giza Museum, welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza and 15 kilometres southwest of Cairo. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries, making it the second largest competition in history. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

A) Answer the following questions:		
What is the Giza Museum? From the passage, what do you like		
Where is the GEM?		
The underlined pronoun "it" refers a) competition b) new museum The GEM iskilometr a) fifty b) five The old museum is	b, c or d: s to the c) old museum res from Cairo. c) fifteen	d) entrance d) two seum.
D Vocabulary an		
hoose the correct answer from a, b,		10/
You can enjoy the glassa) floor b) ground My grandfather always gives me	c) land	or Bridge. d) roof

c) terrible

b) valuable

d) ugly

	It cos	sts a lot of money
) I MILLION		d) dangerous
a) cheap There is no water in the bottle. It's a) far b) empty	c) modern	d) big
We alwayswhat to do at a) travel b) make	c) plan	d) climb
a) travel (3) Which has a bigger, Cairce (a) dictionary (b) instrument (c) The children were very	c) population	d) pollution playing. I couldn't
do my work. a) nervous b) noisy	c) tired	d) old
Paris is to get to than Ror a) easier b) easy	C) IIIOI C C.	
What do you think is dan a) the most b) the more	c) most	d) more
a) didn't b) wasn't	c) don't	d) am not
Read and correct the underlined words We bought most expensive house in the		()
My room is <u>nice</u> than your room.Where were you go on your last holida	v?	()
4: Can she swim? B: Yes, we can.		()
(E) Writing		
Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) word		6
"The Tahya Mas	r Bridge"	
35	-	Cred St.
***************************************		***************************************





Unit 9 Quiz

1 Choose t	he correct a	nswer from a, b, c o	or d:	10
Massa	n	windsurfing with his	s family.	SB
a) wei	nt	b) did	c) made	d) took
@ Hassa	n thinks rock	is dange	rous.	SB
a) sail	ing	b) diving	c) climbing	d) windsurfing
	and Hassan t	hink mountain	looks scar	y. SB
a) bik	ting	b) sailing	c) diving	d) lining
Q Hassa	ın thinks zip	looks fun		SB
a) sai	ling	b) lining	c) diving	d) biking
		zip linin	g.	SB
a) do		b) make	c) have	d) try
		an exciting experi	ence when som	ething unusual or
	erous happer			WB
	venture		c) trip	d) picnic
		nething you sleep ir		amping. WB
	mel	b) guide	c) tent	d) journey
Are yo	ou goingdoing	your homework		ore you eat? WB
	doing	, , ,	c) do	d) to do
⊌ wno.	gc	oing to cook your m	_	? WB
a) is	41	b) is he	c) he is	d) he
⊕ i aian	realf	ke. I made it	•	WB
a) my		b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
		e underlined word	s:	5
• He w	ent to the de	ntist by itself.		() <u>SB</u>
Fatm	a took a phot	o of himself.		() <u>(</u>
© They	sat by the fire	e to keep ourselves	warm	() <u>SB</u>
We b	ought themse	elves a new book. The	e book was for us	(() () () () () () () () () (
(3) Mon	a drew himse	If in a picture. She w	une in the art t	(SB
(10)		- Picture, SHE V	vas in the picture	2. (





Unit 10 Quiz

	Unit 10	A STATE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS	
15	from a, b,	c or d:	10
15 1 Choose the correct and any space 2 Wind	b) plane use the wind to p b) robots car does not use	c) drone produce electricity c) rockets petrol. c) electricity move around.	d) car d) panels wB d) panels SB
a) Star 3 To be			e that is hot but not
too hot. a) warm 3 A/An	b) cool happens when tb) rocket	c) hot he ground sudder c) train	d) cold nly moves. SB d) earthquake
It was hot outsidea) stormy	, but it was nice and b) hot	c) cold	my bedroom. WB d) cool
Peoplea) won'tWe will all	b) wouldn't	c) don't	d) didn't
a) has In 2080, students drives them to so a) read	b) having will	c) have	d) had omputer on the car d) be read
Read and correct tl		(a) • (b) • (c) •	5
 Will there being of the were any k There aren't any of the were aren't aren't aren't any of the were aren't any of the were aren't aren'	e moon? itchens in the past		() SB (
There was a lot of boats in the river yesterday.			



Cumulative Test 2 (Based On Units 9 & 10)





1 Listen and choo	ose the correct answe	r trom a, b, c or d	
How should y	ou listen to other peop	ole?	ل الاستماع مَى مُعاية الكتاب
a) Carefully.	b) Carelessly.	c) Badly.	d) Terribly.
2 A: What shoul	d you do when decide	something impor	tant?
	with the ot		
a) trek	(a p 2	c) negotiate	d) argue
Who should you	ou get the best ideas fr	om?	764 2778
a) Yourself.	b) Each other.	c) Kids.	d) Bad people.

B Language Functions)

c) Sure.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

a) Yes.

Is negotiation about winning an argument?

b) No.



d) Surely.

Basmala: I hope you spend a nice time.

Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Trekking is an adventure hobby that most children, who love nature, like. It is both a hobby and a sport. Taking up trekking as a hobby is also useful to children. Trekking is quite exciting. Here's some advice when you go trekking. Always go with an elder person. Start exercising at least a few weeks before the trekking trip. Make sure to carry your food, water and all your equipment before you leave the camp. Carry dry fruits and sweets. Leave your money, passport, travel tickets and other valuables at the camp or at the hotel. Do not make loud noise or throw litter here and there during your trip. Keep the mountains clean and bring back all your waste from the mountains. Take rest when you feel sick. Always follow your guide and stay close to your group. Many

when you feel sick	k. Always follow your gu trekking to develop lo	uide and stay close ve for nature amoi	ng the students.
A) Answer the fo	ollowing questions:		
(a) Is trekking	a water or a mountain	sport?	
@ What does	the underlined word "	waste" mean?	- N
Why do you	think you need dry fru	uits and sweets wh	en you go trekking?
Why do you	t tillik you need dry ne		
R) Choose the co	orrect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
Way should be	keep your valuables at t	the w	hen you go trekking.
a) school	b) camp	c) hotel	d) both b and c
a) scriour	stay close to your	- 19 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1	ou go trekking.
	b) animals	c) plants	d) parents
a) group			
	to childr	en.	d) useful
a) bad	b) ugly	c) useless	
	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
Choose the corr	rect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	10
			urists. WB
	is a person who sh		
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) nurse	d) guide
② To be	means to be in	a nice temperatu	ire that is hot but not
too hot.			SB
a) warm	b) cool	c) hot	d) cold



A pla	ne which do	esn't have a pilot is	s called a		
a) spa	ice	b) plane	c) drone	d) car	WB
@ I put a	all my photo	s in a photo		,	
a) boo	ok	b) note	c) album	d) guide	
My sis	ster likes the	sea, so she would	like to try		
a) clim	nbing	b) trekking	c) sailing	d) zip lini	ng
01	dre	essed and went out	t with my friends.		
a) tool		b) gave	c) got	d) went	
@ When	did you lea	rn to	a bike, Aya?		
a) driv		b) sail	c) fly	d) ride	
♠ You W	/ill	to the moon o	ne day.		SB
a) go		b) went	c) goes	d) gone	
O Don't	worry! He ca	n do it			
a) mvs	elf	b) herself	c) nimsen	d) yourse	İt
Mext s	ummer, I	travel to	England.	•	
a) goin		b) am going to	c) am going	d) going	
O There volume of the policy o	will <u>is</u> rockets th of you do weren't <u>some</u> ner's car is <u>m</u>	that leave earth exthis job by yourselve toys in the shop. aking of best meta EIGHTY (80) word	f? ((((((((.)))	SB SB
write a pa	ragraph of "Your f	uture plans for th	e next weekend	"	
***************************************					.,,

	······································				
		·····			
35	7			,,,,,,	1
	***************************************				(25)



Unit 11 Quiz

/ .					
	hoose the correct a		c or d:	10	
6	A is poiso	nous.		WB	
	a) whale	b) snake	c) shark	d) turtle	
	To is to ge	t rid of what you d	o not need.	SB	
	a) hear about	b) listen to	c) turn to	d) throw away	
	Ouris the	place where we liv	e.	SB	
	a) plant	b) air	c) planet	d) space	
0	To means	to use again.			
	a) recycle	b) keep	c) cycle	d) write	
6	is the thing	g we do not need, l	ike old pape	r. SB	
	a) Plant	b) Rubbish	c) Plastic	u) Space	
	Don't throw away t	nose glass bottles.	<i>W</i> e can	them.	
6	a) make	b) recycle	c) boil	d) put	
	Ahmed lost his phone,	so his mother was	when he	didn't phone her. WB	
•		b) worried	c) glad	d) scared	
	a) happy Yourun acr		nust walk.	WB	
€		b) mustn't	c) do	d) don't	
-	a) must When you leave ice		water.	SB	
6	The state of the s	b) becoming	c) become	d) becomes	
•	a) became) When youa	way plastic it stays i	the environ	ment for years. 😘	
0	No.	b) throws	c) threw	d) throwing	
0.				5	
K	ead and correct the u	Indermied words.		() SB	
0	You must walk on the	e grass.	ا المحمد		
2 You shouldn't walk and written a text at the same time: (
0	If you touch a jellyfis	h, it <u>sting</u> you.		() <u>SB</u>	
When a stingray is knowing a shark is coming,					
	it jumps out of the w			(
0	If a shark loses a toot	h, a new one grew.		() SB	
				(29)	





Unit 12 Quiz

1 Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:		10
A teacher is a p	erson who	students.		SB
a) teaches	b) learns	c) studies	d) writes	
An architect is	person who	buildings.		SB
a) builds	b) designs	c) paints	d) sells	
A pilot is a pers	on who a	plane.		SB
a) flies	b) rides	c) arives	d) carries	
A An	works with money an	d numbers.	10 200	WB
a) architect	b) accountant	c) engineer	d) office	
A is	a man who works in	business.		WB
a) dentist	b) businessman	c) scientist	d) teacher	
	oks after people's tee	th.		WB
a) vet	b) teacher	c) dentist	d) scientist	t
Ø A w				WB
a) businessman		c) nurse	d) scientist	
O It's really import	ant to look after our p	lanet,	it?	WB
a) hasn't	b) has	c) is	d) isn't	
	your job, don't you?			WB
a) didn't like	NEW STATE OF THE S	c) don't like	d) like	
	s, I go to			SB
a) has	b) does	c) is	d) will	
THE PROPERTY OF			C-4	5
	ne underlined words		,	SB
There were a lot of	people at the meeting	g, weren't they?	()	20
O If we took the rub	bish from all the ocea			
better for sea life.			()	WB
O If I work near a bea	ch, I'll <u>swam</u> every day	in the summer.	() 🧧	WB
	f books, I won't to be able			
and the second s	teacher which teaches			SB
	teacher which teaches	and climatian	Mark Commission of the Market Conference of th	33
				33

Cumulative Test 3 (Based on Units 11 & 12)





	fuem a	COL	d:
	ten and choose the correct answer from a, b	,,	
I is	ten and choose the con-		



- How does Ali go to school?
 - a) By car.

 - c) By bus.
- ② A: When does he talk to his friends? B: At the b) break
 - a) class
 - c) home
- What's his favourite subject?
 - a) English.

 - c) Maths.

b) French.

d) club

d) Science.

b) By bike.

d) On foot.

- After doing his homework, he
 - a) studies English

b) sleeps

c) listens to music

d) watches TV

Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Amal: What are you doing?

Sara: I'm reading a (1)......

Amal: (2)..... it about?

Sara: It's about modern farming in Egypt.

Amal: I see. Egyptian (3)...... are very clever.

Sara: What (4).....farming in 100 years' time?

Amal: I think robot farmers will grow our plants.

Sara: And the (5)..... is very good. They can grow many crops in it.

Amal: In the future, it will be much better than today.

Sara: I agree that life will be different.







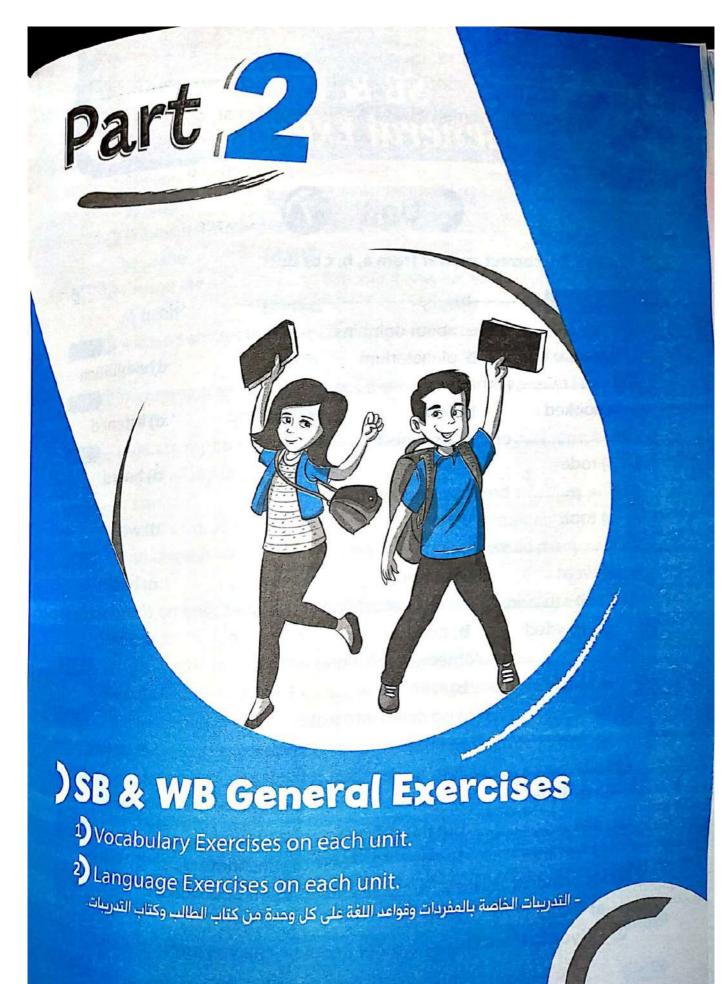
C Dictation & Cumulative Tests Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nader is a famous teacher of science in a prep school for boys and girls. He likes his job very much. He is also helpful to his students. He helps them to do experiments in the science lab. He enjoys growing flowers in the school garden. He is about twenty five years old. He is married. He has got two daughters and one son. He starts work at half past seven. He finishes it at half past two p.m. He's very kind to his students. They will always go to him if the

have any problem	os very kiria to his stu	dents. They will a	always go to him if they
	llowing questions:		, and they
All All Swer the ro	Manual questions:		
where does	Mr Nader teach scie	nce?	***************************************
a bo you trink	a students like Mr Na	der? Why?	
Wilde is will iv	aders Hobby?		
B) Choose the co	rrect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	
Mr Nader ha	s got	hildren.	
a) one	b) no	c) three	d) two
The underling	ed pronoun " <u>it</u> " refe	rs to	-7 (110
a) work	b) garden	c) lab	d) problem
The word "he	lpful" means a pers	on who	a) problem
a) helps other	ers	b) has prot	
c) grows flow		d) learns fr	
	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
Ochoose the corre	ct answer from a, b	, c or d:	
We should trut			10
a) lose	oa lot	of trees to help t	he environment.
	b) plant	c) keep	d) attend
arar	e big, heavy animals	that hit with the	eir big tails.
- July ays	h) Whalee	c) Malle	d) Snakes
Most of the plas	tic goes	the ocean	
a) out	b) into	the ocean.	all buy
	b) into	c) for	d) by
a) pot	ut a plant into a	filled v	vith soil.
1.41	b) sandwich	c) seed	d) stone







SB & WB General Exercises



Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	Vocabulary	I labino		
	🕠 I saw an	about dolphins b) planetarium	c) park	d) exhibition
	a) aquarium	at the stars.		SB
	a) looked	b) saw	c) watched	d) listened
	(a) 100keu	on the big wheel.		SB
	a) rode	b) saw	c) did	d) heard
	@ 1	breakfast this morning		SB SB
	a) took	b) had	c) gave	d) went
	⑤ I	swimming last weeken	d.	SB
	a) went	b) played	c) did	d) had
	③ To be	means not with ot	ther people.	WB
	a) crowded	b) quiet	c) orphan	d) alone
	Ø A	is someone who work	s on a boat or ship.	WB
	a) teacher		c) waiter	d) doctor
	① To	is to go down into wa	ater.	WB
	a) sing	b) float	c) sink	d) think
	1 To be	is to be very bad.		WB
	a) terrible	b) good	c) high	d) sad
	1 like	, but it is difficult to	open them!	WB
	a) bananas	b) figs	c) coconuts	d) dates
	My grandfather	er was aand saile	ed around the world.	WB
	-1 !! "			a) nurse
	Do you like wo	b) driver orking with other peop	le, or do you prefer	to work
6-	a) quiet	b) easy	c) a line	d) alone
1 20				



	a didn't like t	this story. I thought	the writing was	
		n lemble	c) muntened	di amazina
	a) government	k this glass bottle w	villin the	water? WB
		DI LIIdiik	C) SILIK	d) think
	Pobinson Cr	usoe was a sailor o	n a	WB
	1-00	b) SNID	C) Dus	d) rocket
	Crusoe ate a	fish ar	nd it was not very nice	e. WB
	head .	b) died	c) dies	d) death
	O It wasn't alw	ays very hot	the island.	WB
	•	h) with	C) 101	d) on
	There was a/	an, but	there were no caves o	on the island. WB
	T1/	h) tablet	c) Jungie	a) interrec
	@ I went to my	cousin's house last v	weekend. It was	because we
	played all my	favourite games!		WB
	a) had	b) fantastic	c) boring	d) ugly
	My father dro	ove us to the park	on Saturday. It took	an hour to go two
	kilometres! It	was b	ecause there were so	many cars. WB
	a) good	b) OK	c) terrible	d) happy
	1 went on holi	iday last summer. It	was bec	ause the hotel was
	very old.			WB
	a) good	b) OK	c) terrible	
	2 People first pl	ayedn	nusic a long time ago	. WB
	a) traditional	b) modern	c) new	d) fast
	3 m	nusic is sometimes	very loud.	WB
	a) Quiet	b) Rock	c) Stone	d) Wall
1	Language			
		1. 1	no musoum?	
	B: I went to the	you go to the museum four day	es ann	SB
	a) have	b) are	d do	d) did
	⊕ A:	. do vou come to sc	hool? B: I come to sch	ool by bus SB
	a) When	LA M/by	e) How	d) WIIO
	A: Can you play	y chess? B: No, I	play chess.	d) would
	a) can't	b) can	c) do	d) Would
				20 1



		the howling alley.	WB
② It was great	I went to	c) and	d) because
a) but	b) although	I had lots of home	ework. WB
a) but a) It was OK on Satu	ırday,	c) so	d) when
			WB
a) because Bis ship sank	[Here v.	c) 50	d) and
a) because	b) but	n't want to eat anoth	er dead fish! WB
	b) Although	c) But	d) So
a) Because		2-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1	TOTAL PROPERTY.
2 Read and correct the	ne underlined w	oras:	() SB
When did Dina's b	irthday?		() SB
and Hid Dina's f	mily went to the	E leatannin	
When did Dinas is It's Wednesday to	day, so it was Tu	esday this morning.	() SB
2016 was four year	rs <u>last</u> .	and the second second	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Ahmed is twelve.	He was born in 2	000.	
© A: What time is it?	B: It was quarte	r past ten.	() SB
7 A: Do you like jazz			() SB
A: Have you got a		lo, l <u>don't</u> .	() SB
How did your last			() <u>SB</u>
What did you did I			() <u>SB</u>
O Do you got a new			() <u>SB</u>
② She went to schoo	state of the state	It ill.	() SB
You can see the isla			() <u>SB</u>
What time you do			() WB
6 Did you went shop		kend?	() WB
6 You have got a blue			() WB
10 Do you taller than y			() WB
(1) Can your best friend	deposite Form		
The wide	speaks French	!	() WB

(Unit B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

a) Old The Pyramid is a) about The tunnel is 2	han 37, 500,000 pe b) About just	c) under the g	d) More d) more round. d) old
a) high The Tahya Mas	rgoes		iro. d) Bridge
a) Bridge	's very important t		d) sink
a) about m	eans something th	nat is not expensive. c) Cheap	d) Deep
a) deep	b) dangerous ans measuring som b) Deep	ething from one side c) Safe ster from the top to	d) noisy to the other. SE d) Cheap the bottom. SB
a) High 15 To be	means not to b b) cheap	e dangerous. c) safe	d) expensive
anguage Which pyramid is a) more tall	, the Great Py	ramid of Giza or the Re	ed Pyramid? SB d) taller

1 /m	than my friend.		SB
a) more taller	b) tallest	c) taller	d) tall
Some people the	nink maths is the	subject	of all.
a) a difficult	b) difficult	c) most difficu	it a) more amicult
1 think maths is	soc	ial studies.	SB
a) easier than	b) the easiest	c) easy	d) easier
On Saturdays, tl	he market is	on Fridays.	SB SB
a) more guiet	b) quiet	c) quietei	d) quieter than
Tennis is less da	ngerous	football.	d) than
a) this	b) that	c) then	
This is the	popular b	oook in the library.	d) little
a) least	b) less	c) more	
O Did you know th	at fa	stest animal in the wo	d) the least
a) the	b) the most	c) the more	
		e ill than any other ar	d) some
a) more	b) much	c) many	u) some
2 Read and correct			
1 An elephant is b	iggest than a car	mel.	() SB
		y moved to a new flat	CARCO CONTRACTOR CONTR
That mountain w	vas <u>more high</u> th	an we thought.	() \$\overline{\text{3B}}
O Cheese is bad for	r you than fruit.		() <u>SB</u>
6 Let's buy green a	pples because t	he red apples are	
most expensive.			() SB
Old cars are usua	lly noisy than m	odern cars.	() SB
A train is faster a	The state of the s		() SB
1 The museum is u	sually crowded	on a Saturday	
than a Sunday.			() SB
	ress is more nice	than the red dress.	(
and Adel is tall, but Ra		than the rea dress.	() SB
1 don't like this ho			(
1 think motorbike	Caro mara I	very modern.	
1 think motorbike	are more dang	erous bikes.	() SB
The Nile is the lon	g river in the wo	orld.	() SB
The Nile is longes	than the Amaz	on,	() SB
42)			

C Unit

O Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary		De mary	
⊘ We can't go	today beca	use there is no wine	11
a) diving	b) windsurfing	c) trekking	al\ latter
All you need to	gois a k	poat and some wing	11
a) climbing	b) zip lining	c) trekking	d) sailing
1 love going	to go dowr	n rivers. It's usually v	ery quiet! WB
a) kayaking	b) trekking	c) biking	d) lining
We sometimes	go for t	wo days or more, u	sually across the
desert.		4.01.274	WB
a) diving	b) windsurfing	c) trekking	d) kayaking
6 Hove	because I'm good a	at swimming under	the water. WB
a) kayaking	b) sailing	c) trekking	d) diving
3 Try	You start really high,	but you finish on th	ne ground. You go
very fast!	Restrict Mills		WB
a) windsurfing	b) zip lining	c) diving	d) sailing
0 the	third of March, Ahme	ed's going to leave R	as Shetan. SB
a) In	b)On	c) At	d) Of
3 A is	a person who shows	s a place to tourists	. WB
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) nurse	d) guide
② A is	a long trip from one	place to another.	WB
a) swim	b) journey	c) walk	d) dive
Ol love waking up	o in a	and hearing the	birds sing in the
mornings.			NI 8
a) pool	b) tent	c) picnic	d) tint
We want to have	e a to s	show us the marke	et, pecause they
	places to shop.		
a) visitor		c) nurse	d) guide
7,1310	b) pilot		(43)

They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult c) tent d) guide b) journey a) experiment 1 don't want to have a/an on holiday, I want to sleep by a pool! c) adventure d) travel a) experiment b) tent (It is usually very in August. WB b) wind c) sun d) sunny a) rain 1 It is not very hot today because there are a lot ofin the sky. c) storms d) rains b) winds a) clouds There is at the top of that mountain. Look, it is all white! b) rain c) snow d) storm The roads are dangerous when it is because you can't see very well. d) clouds c) sunny b) foggy a) fogs 10 Don't swim in the sea when it is It is dangerous. WB c) rain d) sun b) stormy a) wind • We can't sail because there is no WB d) wind a) fog b) snowshall we do this weekend? WB d) Where c) Why b) How a) What adon't we go kayaking? WB d) Where b) Why c) When a) What Maher and Karim can windsurfing or diving. SB b) play c) do d) go a) make Maher asks Karim to find photos themselves and their other SB cousins. a) at b) of c) by d) near Languagegoing to travel home by bus after school? a) You are b) Are you d) You do c) Do you What are you going to tomorrow? WB a) wearing b) worn c) wore d) wear

(Unit

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocab	ulary			
O A	car door is mad	de of		
		b) metal	c) leather	d) cotton
		made of		
		b) sand		d) glass
⊗ E>	pensive car se	ats are made of		
a)	leather	b) wood	c) metal	d) plastic
O Yo	ou can turn on	the to g	et water.	WB
	tap	b) tip	90 S	d) tube
⊕ TI	ne	is on top of a house.		WB
a	wall	b) tap	c) oven	d) roof
G Yo	ou use	to build a wall.		WB
Annual Control of the		b) bricks		d) taps
		to cook for		WB
) roof	b) oven	c) brick	d) tan
◎ W	/e put pa	nels on a roof. They pr	oduce electricity usi	ng the sun. WB
a	space	b) robot	c) drone	d) solar
€ V	Ve can use the	sun or the wind to pi	roduce	WB
a) electricity	b) wind	c) sign	d) rocket
₩	car	do many things for	us. Some of them of	can talk. WB
) Rockets		c) Turbines	d) Winds
(I) IV	ly aunt made u	s some bread and wh	en we ate it, it was s	till WB
a) warm	(a) cold	c) rainy	d) windy
(B) 2	ome nouses te	II to the ground afte	r the	WB
d) wina	o) snow	c) ialoo	d) earthquake
(D)	nis is a	shape. It is a tri	angle.	WB
d)	triangular	b) triangle	c) rectangle	d) rectangular
	nis is a	shape. It is a cir	cle.	WB
	circle	b) round	c) rectangular	d) triangular
Lang	uage			
O Pos				
nea	u and correct	the underlined wo	rds:	
(D)	nere wouldn't	be any ordinary cars	in the future.	() <u>5B</u>
911	mink wewould	live on the moon:	it is my dream	() <u>5B</u>
O VV	iii thereare el	ectric cars in the fut	ure?	(
O W	e will going to	the moon.		()



(Unit

O Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary			
0 A	an sting you.		100
a) turtle	b) shark	c) stingray	WB
@ A/An	has eight legs.	2105	d) whale
a) snake		c) coral reef	d) tuetle
	as a hard shell to pro	otect it.	
a) coral	b) whale	c) shark	d) turtle
Trees are very g	ood for our	because they give	
a) environment		c) space	d) street
@ Earth is one of e	eight tha	at go around the s	un. WB
a) planes	b) plans	c) plants	d) planets
6 We don't need that	at dirty piece of paper.	You can put it with	the
a) plant	b) rubbish	c) plastic	d) space
@ The	. is the top part of th	e Earth, where we	e stand. WB
a) ground	b) roof	c) wall	d) attic
10 Plants grow in the	ne		WB
a) hole	b) dust	c) air	d) soil
② Ais	an empty space in s	omething.	WB
a) whole		c) hole	d) hall
◎ Tois to p	ut something over sor	nething else to prot	ect or hide it. WB
a) build	b) cover	c) cycle	d) recycle
0 A is a small, l	nard thing made by pla	nts, which grows into	o new plants. WB
a) sand	b) seed	c) soil	a) Sall
@ A lot of	catch fish from t	he Red Sea. It's th	eir job. WB
		nolicemen	a) Histocome
® My grandmother	is 65 and knows a lo	t! We all Will	at site sey
U Judy felt very	b) hate after she	was ill, but she is t	d) kind
a) friendly	b) strong	c) weak	(47)

PART 2

(1) In the museum, we saw a of a very old animal. Its	bones were
very bia!	star
Language	
Youplay games in the road.	WB
b) mustn't c) would	wouldn't
When you cross a road, first you find a safe place to	cross. WB
b) have	must
When you cross a road, youlook left and right.	WB
b) are c) aren't u)	mustn't
I see rubbish on the ground, I throw it in the bir	n. SB
a) Recause b) If c) Although a)	20
a) because a) seed gets water and light, it grows into a healthy	olant. SB
a) Because b) Wileii	So
② You take water when you go to the desert.	SB S
a) must b) mustn't c) have d)	has
Read and correct the underlined words:	AL.
You mustn't forgot why you are doing the activity. () (SB)
② You mustn't listen to other students' ideas. () <u>SB</u>
Tou shouldn't share your racas men) <u>SB</u>
You shouldn't made all the decisions or rules yourself. () <u>SB</u>
You must to take turns. () (SB)
Tou must wear shoes. Tou must take them on) <u>SB</u>
When a turtle is in danger, it go into its shell. () <u>SB</u>
The octopus <u>swimming</u> away fast when it's in danger. () <u>SB</u>
When I'm hungry, I had something to eat.) <u>SB</u>
) WB
@ Lalways laughed when I watch that film () WB
② Leila feels ill if she travel on a hoat) WB
() WB

C Unit

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary			
A businessw	oman is a person who	o works in a/an	
a) workshop	b) hospital	c) school	d) office
@ A/An	designs machines ar	nd engines.	WB
a) teacher	b) accountant	c) engineer	d) sailor
O I didn't like t	he book. I thought it v	was	WB
boon /c	b) terrible	c) wonderful	d) fantastic
Mariam got	the of her test	t. She did very well!	WB
a) book	b) cause	c) reason	d) result
6 I love learning	g about sea life. I war	nt to be a marine	
a) architect	b) biologist	c) engineer	d) teacher
3 A/An	. (for example, the Atl	antic) is bigger than	n a sea. WB
a) ocean	b) sea	c) river	d) lake
7 The scientist	did lots of tests in the		d) laboratory
a) office	b) playground	c) library	a) laboratory
Tois	to get money by wor	king.	d) make
a) do	b) win	c) earn	
	mething that you wea	c) Wood	d) Glass
a) Jewellery	b) Paper		WB
1 A/An	is a fully grown perso	c) baby	d) toddler
a) child	b) adult	hara paople make or	
① A is a re	oom or small building w	c) workshop	d) grocery
a) laboratory			WB
The state of the s	ans an ability to do so	c) skeleton	d) skip
a) skill	b) skull	of a group of peop	ole. WB
	e art, ideas, beliefs, etc	c) Art	d) Culture
a) Reading	b) Science nething made from cl	lay such as pots, dis	hes, etc. WB
is sor	nething made from C	c) Wood	
(a) Jewellery	b) Pottery ot of to make a	heautiful basket.	WB
a) skull	ot of to make a	c) scales	d) skills
a) skull	b) jewellery	# 108-90A	(49)

	1 You can see peo	ple making baske	ts in the down	n the road. WB
	a) workshop	b) park	c) farm	d) school
	My cousin is a/a	n now. Sh	e was 18 last week!	WB
	a) boy	b) child	c) adult	d) baby
	A doctor can usu		of money.	WB
	a) win	b) earn	c) give	d) see
	Tourists learn a lot	about ancient Egy	ptianwhen they	visit Egypt. WB
	a) culture	b) book	c) science	u) matris
	My father bought	this for m	y mother when they g	ot married. WB
	a) jewellery	b) pottery	c) wood	a) glass
	1 love the red, blu	ue and green pott	ery in this workshop.	It is very
	A	a view 1		WB
	a) hopeful	b) terrible	c) helpful	d) colourful
	2 My father has go	t a camera, but h	e doesn't often	it. He prefers his
	phone.			WB
	a) useful	b) use	c) hope	d) hopeful
	The black and w The black and w	hite maps you ga	ve me are very	WB
	a) useful	b) use	c) hope	d) hopeful
	Language			
	A scientist is a per	ersonstu	dies science.	WB
	a) where	b) which	c) who	d) what
	Sara wants to be	a marine biolog	ist, she?	WB
	a) does	b) is	c) isn't	d) doesn't
	3 Your grandmoth	er doesn't like fis	h,she?	WB
	a) does	b) doesn't	c) don't	d) do
	You did your hor	nework last nigh	t, didn't?	WB
	a) she	b) he	c) [d) you
-	Nasser will write	to me when he	gets there,?	WB
The state of	a) won't Nasser	b) won't he	c) will he	d) will Nasser
			e match, were	7 WB
	a) she	b) they		122000
			c) there	d) it
	A lot of people pa) they don't	refer living in Ca	iro,?	WB
-	-, they don't	b) don't they	c) they do	d) do they

Part 3



) Final Tests

- 1) (17) Final Tests.
- 2) (2) Al Azhar Exams.

- الاختبارات العامة على المنهج وعددها (١١٧)

- اختبارات الأزهر الشريف وعديها (٣)

Tapescript



Final Tests

Test





- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - A: When was the Grand Egyptian Museum opened? B: In
 - a) 2000
- **b)** 2009
- c) 2019
- d) 2002
- O How far is the museum from the Pyramids at Giza?
 - a) Two kilometres.

b) Ten kilometres.

c) Twenty kilometres.

- d) Twelve kilometres.
- What is the most beautiful part of the museum?
 - a) The hall.

b) The main room.

c) The entrance.

- d) The second floor.
- How big is the biggest statue in the museum?
 - a) Two metres.

b) Twelve metres.

c) Twenty metres.

d) Twenty two metres.

Language Functions)

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Where are you going?

Marwan: I'm going to the doctor.

Ahmed :(1)..... with you?

Marwan: I don't feel well.

Ahmed: Do you practise sports?

Marwan: No, I (2).....

Ahmed: Why don't you practise a sport?

Marwan: Because I'm (3)...... | study all the time.

Marwan: That's a good (5).....



	1	
PART	3	
The same of the sa	1	

Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions: Everyone has a hobby. My hobby is listening to music and watching Ty. Everyone has a nobby. My howe, I like all kinds of music and it doesn't matter whether I listen to happy, sad, or Joyful music. When I'm free, I listen to my favourite songs. At the weekends, Joyful music. when the downtown to buy good CDs. I usually I usually go to music shops in the downtown to buy good CDs. I usually I usually go to music shops have is the thing that has the power to make me happy. I spend an hour after dinner watching news and programmes, me nappy. I spend an The World Here and There" because it is exciting. I enjoy a programme called "The World Here and There" because it is exciting. A) Answer the following questions: What kind of music does the writer like listening to? Where does the writer buy good CDs? O How long does the writer spend after dinner watching news and programmes? B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: @ "The World Here and There" is a c) programme d) book b) play a) film When the writer is, he listens to his favourite songs. d) working b) not busy c) asleep a) busy l usually buyfrom the downtown. a) videos b) cassettes c) tables d) CDs Vocabulary and Structure 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: A marine is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it. a) scientist d) guide b) dentist c) biologist 2 You can enjoy the glass in the Tahya Masr Bridge. a) floor d) roof b) ground c) land Marwan, five, is frightened of the dark. a) age d) young b) old

c) aged

10



(A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- When did you go to Sami's house?
 - a) On Saturday.
 - c) On Monday.
- Which sport did they play?
 - a) Basketball.
 - c) Volleyball.
- Who helped me with my homework?
 - a) My father.
 - c) My friends.
- What is in the sports centre?
 - a) A playground.c) A swimming pool.

- b) On Sunday.
- d) On Tuesday.
- b) Handball.
- d) Football.
- b) My mother.
- d) My grandmother.
- b) A gym.
 - d) A stadium.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Munir: I'm happy to see you, Assem.

Assem: I'm happy, too.

Munir: (1)......you going to go?

Assem: I'm going to go to the (2)......centre.

Munir: What are you (3)..... there?

Assem: I'm going to go swimming.

Munir: I didn't know you like swimming.

Assem: Yes, I like it. (4)......go swimming together.

Munir: That's a good (5).....

Assem: OK. I will wait for you at the sports centre.





Final Tests Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



If you want to be good at English, the best thing you can do is to build up your words. First of all, you should read a lot. You can read short stories, comics, newspapers, magazines, etc...... As you read, you can guess the meanings of new words. If you cannot, then look them up in a dictionary. Another way is to watch movies in English. Keep a vocabulary notebook OF PI

opinion, to spea Practice makes p	n a few word ak to people perfect.	ds each day. You sl all you need is to u	hould revise them. In my se the words you learned.	
A) Answer the f	ollowing qu	lestions: If the passage?		
1 What is the	: most impor	tant thing when you	I speak to people?	
What does	the underlin	ed pronoun " <u>them</u> "	refer to?	
B) Choose the c	orrect answ	er from a, b, c or d:		
Don't stop a) guess You should learn new ve a) gramma The word "r a) dictionar c) films	if you read a ne meaning of b) miss keep a notebocabulary. r b) words novies" is and ries	word you don't und of new words. c) lose book for new c) passages other word for b) stories d) books	d) make to help you to d) letters	
a _c	Vocabul	ary and Struct	ure)	
O The Habu Tempa) on	sic rias colum	1115 SIMIIar	those at Karnak.	
a) plastic	its head into b) bin	c) at its	d) shell	

c) tail

	about a new	railway line across India
Jules Verne read a newspaper	c) object	d) article
		D leit . I
@ The plano is a musical machine	c) instrument	d) Whiteboard
The piano is a musical	o to Hollywood and	d become a movie star
Wastog		d) planet
a) research b) dream	C) test	cars
		d) plactric
(a) electrical (b) electronic	c) electricity	a) electric
a) electrical b) closed Solim	nan play	
a) electrical b) electronic Which team does Waleed Solim	c) from	d) out
a) in b) for	by then I tried to do	my maths homework
a) in b) for 1 my lunc	n, then theate as	d) eaten
	i Cathig	
The second secon	person in r	ny family.
a) older	Spanish	before your holiday?
a) older b) the older • Are you going to	spanist	d) learns
a) learn b) learning	c) learned	a) learns
per la contraction de la contr	d words.	(A)
5 Read and correct the underline	d Words.	()
Is she go to try rock climbing?		(
Which pyramid is tall, the Gr	reat Pyramid of G	iza or the Red Pyramid
The superior of the superior		(
OThe table are made of wood		()
The table <u>are</u> made of wood.	didat arriva	()
(1) I will walk to school if the bus	didn't arrive.	A STREET
	Writing 🔵	
6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (8	80) words on:	6
"Your pla	ans for tomorrow	,n

	•••••	
35	***************************************	- constants
		The state of the s



1	Listen and choose the	correct answer	from a, b, c or d:	
	O A: Where do the Egyp	otians make pot	لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب tery? B: In	نصوص ا
	a) factories		b) schools	***** •
	c) workshops		d) stadiums	
	② A: What is traditional	in Kenya? B: To	make	
	a) pottery		b) jewellery	
	c) social media		d) money	
	O A: Where can we see	the colourful jev		H
	a) shops			
	c) social media		d) markets	
	② A: Why do some local	businesses use	social media and the	internet?
	B: To je	wellery.		
	a) sell b) sail	c) buy	d) make
	B	anguage Fu	unctions)	
2	Complete the following	dialogue:		
	Teacher: Why were you		ıv?	5
	Teacher: Did (2)	2 2 20	a doctor?	
			a doctor.	
	Teacher: Hospital! Was it	ook me to (5)		
	Ali : Yes bear	serious?	and the second section in	
	Yes, because I at	te polluted food	l	
	Teacher: (4)		buy it from?	
	From the street	•		
	Teacher: Oh! You should	n't do that agair	n.	
	Of course 1/5			

Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



There are many kinds of houses. Most people in the United States live in houses made of wood or bricks. In Eritrea, the nomadic people build their houses of straw. The homes are small and cool. They can move their houses when they want to move. They take their animals to new places in order to find food. People who belong to Peru build their houses of trees. They also live on islands that are made of trees! Their boats are made of trees too! About 2,000 people live on these man-made islands. They started to build

their own islands a	bout 500 years ago.		
	lowing questions: est people in the Uni		
Why do the n	omads take their an		
	umber of people wh		
B) Choose the cor	rect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	
	pelong to Peru build		
a) wood	b) trees	c) bricks	d) straw
	f the nomads are		
a) cool	b) cold	c) hot	d) boiling
The pronoun	"They"refers to		•
a) people in	the United States	b) people from	m Peru
c) the noma	dic people	d) the homes of	of the nomadic people
	Vocabular	y and Struc	ture)
	t answer from a, b		10
He went out of t	he sea and	himself	with a towel.
a) heated	b) cooled	c) emptied	d) dried
Some illnesses v	vill	completely in th	ne future.
a) disappear	b) dive	c) make	a) have
a) cond	old thir	igs to save our e	nvironment.
a) send	b) recycle	c) eat	d) plant

c) eat



the next 30 ye	ears, there will be a l	ot of	in our lives
	ears, there will be a l b) predictions		
a) charge	te	The big truck car	n't cross it.
- CFD	CITIOLY		U Darrow
a) most young peo	ple read	stories. The	ey are exciting.
. Ituro	D) Sau	L) Dau	a) adventure
The Tahva Masr	is ab	out 67 metres w	vide.
a) c+adium	o) lower	c) River	d) Bridge
There Was	water on	the floor.	
	ni an	C) any	d) no word
a) a	, you or your	sister?	
a) old	b) more old	c) older	d) older than
My parents will bu	ıy	a new car.	up the water
a) himself	out of the latest to	b) herself	Smale of the
c) yourselves		d) themselve	s man
		1 to 1	
Read and correct the			4
Tennis is less dang		•	()
@I made <u>himself</u> a co			()
We <u>mustn't</u> be quie			()
He will buy a new	car, <u>will</u> he?		()
	(E) Westing		
	E) WILLIAM		
Write a paragraph of	EICHTY (ON) WOR	ls on:	
o mic a paragraph of			6
	"A sport you	i like"	dealer segment in
10 A S 13 C pr 1 a s 1			
	***************************************	••••••	
***************************************	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		
			(-) Country Less
	••••••		An exception 257
35 /			
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		







1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- What is the text about?
 - a) The past.
 - c) The future.

- b) The present.
- d) Nowadays.
- Where will you go for a holiday in 2080?
 - a) To the moon.

b) To the beach.

c) To the desert.

- d) To the forest.
- How will you go to the moon?
 - a) By plane.

b) On foot.

c) By bus.

- d) By rocket.
- O How long will the journey to the moon take?
 - a) 12 days.

b) 12 weeks.

c) 12 hours.

d) 12 years.

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kareem: The holiday will be in two weeks. Are you happy?

Hanan: Of course. I'm (1) to travel.

Kareem: Where are you going to travel?

Hanan : (2) going to travel to Paris.

Kareem: Wow! Are you going to (3) your family?

Hanan: No, I'm going to travel with my uncle Sayed.

Kareem: (4) you stay there?

Hanan: Two weeks.

Kareem: I hope you enjoy your time there.

Hanan : (5)







Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amir. I am twelve years old. We have a small toy shop in our town. My father says Fridays are the busiest day in our toy shop. So after we have breakfast, my mum takes me there to help my dad. That's another reason why I like Fridays. We let children play with the toys when they are in the store. My father says I should watch the toys and that I need to make sure nothing breaks. Many children from my school also come to the shop to look at our new toys. It is always noisy here, because there are a lot of babies and small children. Little girls like to go for dolls, boys go for cars. Some just want to play with the toys, some really want to buy them. It's a bit tiring for me, but I like going to the shop and helping my father.

	ollowing question amir help his father	on Fridays?	Institution (a
What do the		t in the shop?	
3 What does t	he underlined "the	ere" refer to?	
1 · T	orrect answer from		
100		g his father in the to	
a) minds	b) dislikes	c) hates	d) enjoys
The word "st	ore" means a		
a) shop	b) toy	c) doll	d) kid
@ Amir is	years	old.	
a) seven	b) twenty	c) twelve	d) eight
D	Vocabulary a	ınd Structure	
Choose the correct	t answer from a,	b, c or d:	10
O A	is a hole just	under the ground.	
a) bridge	b) tunnel	c) pyramid	d) cave
② Hassan	windsu	rfing with his family	y last weekend.
a) did	b) played	c) went	d) made
An architect is a	porcon who	buildings.	
a) designs	b) flies	c) writes	d) builds

You should	yourself fr	om the cold. Put on yo	ur coat.
a) protect		c) sting	d) hit
There's a	in the livir	ng room where I can re	lax.
a) sofa	b) table	c) TV	d) book
Crossing road	ds is	for old people.	
a) dangerou		c) poisonous	d) crowded
My father se	nt me a/an	which contains	a new camera.
a) parcel	b) letter	c) email	d) post
The weather	· fine	this morning.	
a) was	b) did	c) are	d) does
If I feel thirst	ty, I always	water.	t e
a) will drink	b) drinks	c) drank	d) drink
1 We	work hard to pa	ass our exams.	
a) shouldn'	t b) mustn't	c) won't	d) must
Read and cor	rect the underlined	words:	Long to N
What are th	ne girls <u>does</u> now?		()
② This room by	pelongs to me and m	y brother. It's mine.	(
There aren'	t <u>some</u> peppers in th	ne kitchen.	()
		ge school, I <u>aren't</u> ver	ry good. ()
			, 3 ((((((((((((((((
	(F) V	Vriting 5	
			1 To 300 W. T.
Write a parag	graph of EIGHTY (8	0) words on:	
		venture sport"	6
		sentare sport	
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	······································	••••••	
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		

•••••			
••••			
	······································	•••••	***************************************
ac	7		***************************************
35	***************************************	M ¹ a - Fe	
		••••••••••••••	Manager and Manage





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- Which sea animal is the slowest?
 - a) The turtle.
 - c) The octopus.
- Which sea animal is poisonous?
 - a) The turtle.
 - c) The octopus.
- Why does the turtle have a shell?
 - a) To eat it.
 - c) To drink it.

- b) The stingray.
- d) The shark.
- **b**) The stingray.
- d) The whale.
- b) To protect it.
- d) To build it.
- 4 How many legs does the octopus have?
 - a) Eight.
- b) Six.
- c) Four.
- d) Two.



2 Complete the following dialogue:



Marwa: Good morning, Menna. Where were you yesterday?

Menna: Good morning, Marwa. I travelled to Alex (1)...... my family.

Marwa: Really! (2)...... did you visit there?

Menna: We went to the beach in the early morning.

Marwa: What did you do after that?

Menna: We went to the (3)...... where we saw a lot of animals.

Marwa: Wow! What a fantastic place!

Menna: Also, we went to Alexandria Library.

Marwa: (4)..... return to Cairo?

Menna: (5)...... 11 o'clock p.m.



Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school. I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother was hot. We took him to hospital and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night and I couldn't do

A) Answer the following How did he go to	ing questions school?	:	and resident do
Why did he arrive		The state of the s	-5- u u u u u u u u u u
How was his bro	ther when he	went back home afte	er school?
B) Choose the correc			
🕼 I got up at			
a) half past seve	n -	b) quarter past seve	en
c) quarter to sev	en	d) seven	
My teacher was	angry because	9	•
a) didn't do my l	homework	b) forgot my book	
c) forgot my not	ebook	d) lost my noteboo	ok
I returned home	·		
a) in the mornin	g	b) in the afternoon	ľ
c) at night		d) at noon	
D VA	ocabulary	and Structure	
Choose the correct a	nswer from a	, b, c or d:	10
My father is a/an		He always flies plan	es around the world
a) engineer			d) scientist
Ø I div	5-50-0-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-	- NEW CONTROLS WANTIMES AND	ful.
a) played	b) did	c) had	d) went



when did the a	ccident	7	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
a) result	b) cause	-11	
## He was born	2 nd Mar	ch 1990	d) get
a) on	b) in		
My son always li	ikes to spend time		d) by
wardeen is going	g to	her lunch -4	d) in
a) make	b) have	c) give	estaurant.
@ His	is to play for a	hig club and t	d) design
a) research	b) dream	c) tost	great footballer.
There	a dog in his	s house yesterday. I cou	d) planet
a) was	b) wasn't	c) were	
9	hiah is th	c) Were	d) weren't
a) now	h) Whon		
@ Merna hasn't got	any brothers	c) Which	d) What
a) has Merna	b) does Merna	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
			d) does she
6 Read and correct th	e underlined we	orde.	
			4
Ali is the nicer ne	ignbour in our str	eet.	()
My father bought	a new villa on 20	016.	()
oumustn't follow	v the school rules		(
O Soha will do the h	omework tomor	row.will she?	()
	THE OWNER OF THE PARTY OF THE P		(
2.23	(E) Writ	tina 5	
6 Wrise			
Write a paragraph o	f EIGHTY (80) we	ords on:	
"H	OW you spont w	our last weekend"	•
***********	ow you spent yo	Jul last weekend	
***************************************	•••••		

***************************************		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
*************		P4 1	

***************************************	••••		
	The said		
1	***************************************		
35	•••••		
35		***************************************	
Mark of the second			<i>*</i>







Listen and choose the correct answ		
A: What was Deir el-Medina? B: It	's a/an	village.
a) modern	b) new	A C
c) ancient	d) present	
10 How many houses were there in	Deir el-Medina?	
a) 68.	b) 86.	
c) 80.	d) 60.	
What colour were their doors?		

- a) White
 - a) White.

b) Blue.

c) Black.

- d) Red.
- What were the doors made of?
 - a) Wood.

b) Bricks.

c) Plastic.

d) Metal.

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy: Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist: Yes, it is.

Tourist: I visited the Pyramids and the Grand Egyptian (2)......

Ramy : How (3)......you stay in Egypt?

Tourist: I'll stay here for 2 weeks.

Ramy : Are you going to visit other places?

Ramy : What places will you visit there?

Tourist: I'll visit the Karnak (5).....











Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are fish in seas, rivers and lakes. There are over 30,000 kinds of fish in the world. Their sizes range from 2 cm to 20 cm long. Their fins and tails are used in swimming. Most fish feed on other fish. Some eat plants. Fish are very important food. We also get other products from fish such as fish oil and glue. Now, fishing has become a big industry. There are lots of fish farms in many countries today. These provide big amounts of fish for eating and processing.

	following questi	ions:	g and processing.
@ How many	y kinds of fish are	there?	
How big a	re fish?	erwid	5624
 Fish use a) fins The underlimation a) fish c) many col 		c) heads refers to b) fish farms d) the amounts of f	ish
a) fish	b) plants	C) OII	d) glue
(1) Choose the correct	Vocabulary	and Structure , b, c or d:	10
-1 604	b) modern has a har	c) big d shell to protect it. c) whale	d) emptyd) stingray
2		to look at the stars.	d) stadium meet my friends.
a) along	b) long	c) a long	d) longs

	/ father bought a r	new house.We	to it two	months ago
a)	moved	b) rode	c) swam	d) removed
My	work is near my	home. It is 100 me	tres	
a)	way	b) a way	c) away	d) ways
	family sits by the	fire to	warm.	-, ways
a)	give	b) do	c) keep	d) go
O If I	feel hungry, I alw	ays	healthy snacks.	4/90
a)	will eat	b) eats	c) ate	d) eat
Yo	u want to be a tea	acher,	7 - 4 - 7	u)eat
a)	don't l	b) don't you	c) do you	ا داد
① In	the future, we v	vill not	to cine	d) do I
W	atch films on table	ets.	to cine	mas, we will
a)go	b) went	c) gone	d) goes
(5) Read	d and correct the	underlined word	s:	
			n't pass our exams.	4
@ A	: <u>Do</u> you happy? E	3: Yes, I am.	in c pass our exams.	
© TI	he river freezes wh	nen it was cold		()
() Is	your father <u>old</u> th	nan your mother?		()
		(E) Writin	70	()
6 Writ	te a paragraph o	f EIGHTY (80) wor		
		"Posystia	as on:	(6)
		"Recyclir	ng"	

				•••••
•••••				

			***************************************	••••••
	35			







- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- What is there in our air?
 - a) Trees.

b) Nuts.

c) Pollution.

d) Seeds.

- What can you plant?
 - a) A nut.

b) A fruit.

c) Both a and b.

- d) Neither a nor b.
- Who should help save our planet?
 - a) Rich people.

b) Some people.

c) Everyone.

- d) No one.
- What can help to keep our air healthy?
 - a) Trees.

b) Pollution.

c) Cars.

d) Planes.







Lamees: Hello, Nora. What a beautiful T-shirt!

: Hi, Lamees. (1)..... you very much.

Lamees: Is it new?

Nora

Nora: (2)....., I bought it yesterday.

Lamees : (3)..... is it?

Nora: It is 500 pounds.

Lamees: Where (4).....it?

Nora : I bought it from El Horia Mall.

Lamees: What is it made of?

Nora: It is made of (5).....



(Reading Comprehension)



Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Sherief. I love football. I am a great fan of all football teams. I am also interested in cars. I'm crazy about driving and I also enjoy fixing cars. When I was ten, I had many toy cars. I played with them, repaired the ones my friends broke. I also helped my dad fix his car. So, I want to become a mechanic and open up my own shop. My parents are happy with my choice, too. They think it's important that I do a job that I like. I have a good job now and I really enjoy it. I'm planning to get married soon. Who knows, maybe I will have a car shop in the future.

ma		a car shop in th		A Marie Miles
A)	Which spor	ollowing questi t does Sherief lik		
	What do Sh	erief's parents th	nink of his choice to	be a mechanic?
	What does	the underlined p	oronoun " <u>them</u> " ref	
В)	Choose the company of the best tite a) Sherief's c) Sherief a	orrect answer f le for this passag job choice nd football	rom a, b, c or d: ge isb) Cars in our li d) Sherief and	fe his friends
	a) car Sherief hel	b) toy ped his dad b) wash	c) toy car his c c) push	d) car shop ar. d) drive
4 Ch	oose the corre	ect answer fron	The state of the s	
0	a) bestWhenever I goa) built	b) good o out, my father b) take ve won't have to	tells me to c) stay b learn to	d) the better home before dark. d) return because cars will d) design
0	In the future, v drive themselv	ve won't have to res!	c) stay o learn to	d) return because cars wi

Scientists will try	to	cures for cancer.	
watch	b) take	c) find	d) teach
O Press your finger		the soil to make a s	mall hole about
2 cm deep.			
	b) on	c) into	d) for
a) to	illa were made of.	They	are very strong.
	h) plastic	C) Glass	U) Direits
a) wood	to know th	ne meaning of new wor	rds.
Litaboard	b) diary	Cluicionary	d) notebook
a) Whiteboard	is your birtho	day? B: It's in May.	
	h) Who	CIVITOSC	d) Who's
a) WhenMy sister made th	ois delicious cake		
			d) herself
a) himself	any kitchen	s in ancient Egyptian	houses.
There	b) weren't	c) isn't	d) aren't
a) wasn't	b) Welent		
Read and correct the	underlined wor	ds:	4
Read and correct the	than travelli	ing by bus.	()
Travelling by car is	good man davem	9/	()
1 If we heat ice, it will	become water.		()
They didn't studied	Well yesterday.	d for you.	()
You must eat too m	nuch meat. It is ba	4101,70	
	(E) White	ng))	
6 Write a paragraph of	EIGHTY (80) wor	ds on:	6
Write a paragraph of	low will life be in	the future?"	
"F	low will life be in	the race.	
***************************************			•••••

35			







- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- The walls of the houses were made of
 - a) wood

b) glass

c) iron

- d) bricks
- Which colour did people paint their houses with?
 - a) Red only.

b) White only.

c) White and red.

- d) Orange.
- Mhat weren't at their houses?
 - a) Doors.

b) Kitchens.

c) Living rooms.

d) Bedrooms.

- Where did they sleep?
 - a) On the roof.

b) In the kitchen.

c) In the living room.

d) On the walls.

B Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:



- Ahmed: Hi, Ashraf, would you like to go out with me this weekend?
- Ashraf: Sure. (1)......we do?

Ahmed: I don't know. Do you have any ideas?

Ashraf: How (2)..... to the cinema?

Ahmed: That sounds great. Which film shall we watch?

Ashraf: Let's (3).....a comic film for Adel Eman.

Ashraf: Really! Let's watch another one.

Ahmed: How about watching an action film?

Ashraf : Great (5).....!



(C) Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



Sarah loved drawing. She practised drawing a lot. She knew how to draw nature. She could draw people. She did not know how to draw animals. She decided it was time to learn. She searched for instructions online. She also borrowed books. She studied what she found. She looked at many **images**. She decided to practise. She wanted to start with something easy. She first chose a dog. After many tries, she finally got it. She traced the outline. She then coloured it. She was proud of herself. She decided to take a break. Tomorrow, she would learn how to draw a bear.

A) Answer the f What was S	ollowing quest Sarah's favourite	ions: hobby?	
		arah to learn drawi	ng?
	arah proud of he		
B) Choose the co	orrect answer fo		
		c) mountains	
		r to	
		c) pieces	The state of the s
		aw a	
a) bear	b) snake	c) monkey	d) giraffe
D	Vocabulary	y and Structur	e)
Choose the corre	ct answer from	a, b, c or d:	10
My father likes t	to listen to	music. He li	kes old songs.
a) traditional		c) jazz	d) rock
We went to the		and rode on the b	oig wheel.
a) museum	b) library	c) funfair	d) stadium.
My brother alwa	avs	mistakes, so my	father punishes him.
a) does	b) takes	c) gives	d) makes
When will you		powling?	
a) do	b) have	c) go	d) draw



My wife used the	to	make us some cal	kes.
a) oven 3 How	b) tap is the Lake Bai	c) stone kal in Russia?	d) wool
a) many The children sat o	b) much	c) deep on the floor while w	d) high vatching the film.
a) teaspoons Books	b) curtains of paper		d) statues
a) made When I was in Al		c) is made up early eve	d) are makingry day.
a) am getting Who is	b) getting , Ali or h		d) got
a) tall	b) more tall	c) taller	d) taller than
② If I <u>ate</u> too many ③ There <u>weren't</u> an ④ People <u>must</u> sm	ny money with me. noke in hospitals.	iting)	
Write a paragrap		vords on: ncient Egypt"	6
	- 1		
35			





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



وص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 What is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean?
 - a) The turtle.

b) The shark.

c) The jellyfish.

- d) The octopus.
- Mow many teeth does a shark use in its life?
 - a) 200.

b) 200,000.

c) 2,000.

- d) 20,000.
- (a) A: What is the shark? B: It's a animal.
 - a) desert

b) forest

c) sea

d) wild

- What is the text about?
 - a) The whale.

b) The shark.

c) The dolphin.

d) The jellyfish.

B Language Functions)

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Omar : Do you like sports, Khaled?

Omar : (2)...... do you prefer, a water sport or

a mountain one?

Khaled: I like water sports.

Omar : What kind of water sports do you like?

Khaled: I like sailing. What about you?

Omar : I prefer (3).....

Khaled: Why (4).....trekking?

Omar : Because I like the nature.

Khaled: I like the nature, (5)......

(C) Reading Comprehension

6

Read the following, then answer the questions:

After graduating from the university, John knew he would need to find a job soon. The problem was that he wasn't sure what kind of work he wanted to do. One night, his father encouraged him to do what he liked most. His father said he had worked his whole life doing a job he didn't really enjoy.

John's favourite job was teaching. He was happy when he was helping others. John also learned that you should work at the job you like to do well at it. He wrote a book about his experiences, and today he tells his story to university students.

university stude A) Answer the What was	following questic John's problem?		to le
What was	John's favourite jo	b?	
When was	John happy?		
	correct answer fr		24.100 -22,14
	hn		
a) chose h	is job soon	b) couldn't choos	se his job
c) didn't want to work d) loved his father			er
		job	
a) he didn	· On the control to the	b) he enjoyed	
c) he want		d) he didn't enjo	
(i) John wrot	e a	about his experi	ences.
a) novei	b) story	c) book	d) magazine
	Vocabular	y and Structur	2)
hoose the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
🕦 Basmala made	e this T-shirt		30
a) himself		c) yourself	d) myself
3 I met the boy		layed the piano at t	he party.
a) whom	b) when	c) what	d) who
My father will	give me a prize if I	the	full mark in the exam.
a) get		c) got	d) getting

You can usually.	pape	er, so don't throw	it away.
a) recycle	b) cycle	c) heat	d) hit
Two years ago, In	visited a	to see how it	can protect animals.
a) poster	b) radio station	c) pot	d) nature reserve
working properl	ew washingy. y.	becaus	
a) machine	b) meeting	c) article	d) engine
Most windows a	re made of	······························· •	
a) wool	b) glass	c) cotton	d) paper
O The thief	my bro	ther and stole hi	s money.
a) hit	b) stung	c) protected	d) poisoned
My teacher alway	ys gives me a/an	present wh	nen I get high marks.
a) bad	b) afraid	c) scary	d) special
When we go can	nping, we usually sle	ep in a	
a) room	b) bed	c) tent	d) flat
3 Read and correct t			A
	water, it <u>turned</u> into		()
We're going to h	urt <u>yourselves</u> if we'r	e not careful.	()
Ali, whose joined	d the Faculty of Medi	cine, is my neigh	nbour. ()
My daughter is of the second	juieter then my son.		()
6 Write a very superior	E Writin		
6 Write a paragraph	or EIGHTY (80) Wor	as on:	6
	"A historic place	you visited"	gale
	<mark></mark>	•••••	
······································		•••••	

***************************************			***************************************
35	·······		
		·····	





(A) Listening)

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - تصوص الاستماع في تماية الكتاب



- Where are the three places?
 - a) In Alexandria.

b) In Luxor.

c) In Assuit.

- d) In Tanta.
- What is the most popular place for tourists to visit?
 - a) Alexandria beach.

b) The Habu Temple.

c) The Karnak Temple.

- d) The Valley of the Kings.
- - a) the most popular place
- b) the quietest place

c) the biggest place

- d) the least crowded place
- - a) less crowded

b) the most popular place

c) more crowded

d) the most interesting place

B Language Functions

- Complete the following dialogue:
 - Ahmed: Where did you spend your last weekend?
 - Said : I went to the (1)......
 - Ahmed: Really! Who did you go with?
 - Said :1 (2)..... with my cousins.
 - Ahmed: What did you do there?
 - Said : I rode (3)..... the big wheel.
 - Ahmed: (4)..... enjoy there?
 - Said : Yes, I had a nice time.
 - Ahmed: (5)......going to spend the next weekend?
 - Said : We're going to visit the Grand Egyptian Museum.



Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



Basmala loves to swim. She loves sea animals. Her friends bought her tickets to the aquarium as a present on her birthday. She was so happy. She took her camera to the aquarium. She was ready to take a lot of pictures. She saw twentyfive different types of fish. She saw a whale. She saw a turtle. She saw an octopus and a stingray. She saw a jellyfish and a shark. Her favourite were the whales. She thinks they are cute and friendly. She bought a picture album at the gift shop. There were small whales on the picture album. What a good day!

② How many	types of fish did s	y her tickets to th	arium?
***************************************	Basmala like whale	es?	
B) Choose the c	orrect answer fro	om a, b, c or d:	
Basmala's fa	b) desert avourite type of fi	c) sea sh was the	d) wild
The underli	ined pronoun "the	c) octopus by refers to the	d) turtle
a) turtles	Sharks	c) whales and Structu	d) octopuses
Choose the corre	ect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	
a) makes	er always b) does	c) takes	d) goes
/ at	ns get their water b) into	c) for	the Nile River.
u	returned to his l	nome on the beac	h, he had no fish, only
a) skeleton c) rubbish bag		b) glove d) headpho	one

	sion and more in	terectine
① Technology willb) take	" our lives easier and more in c) make	d) leave
a) have b) take The Grand Egyptian Museum	has more space for	Objects,
The Grand Egyptian Museum	c) ugly	a) boring
a) valuable b) but	man with a big stick and esca	pea.
a) valuable b) bad The thief the r	c) protected	d) poisoned
a) hit	nany things from the	
a) hit b) stung At school, children like to buy n b) uniforn	c) timetable	d) hall
a) canteen b) uniforn One of beautif	ful parts of the museum is th	e entrance.
One of	re c) the most	d) most
a) more	d left in the party yesterday.	
a) more b) the mo	c) isn't	d) aren't
a) wasn't b) weren't	. 2015.	
We moved to this house	c) ago	d) this
a) in b) last	-, -,	
3 Read and correct the underline	d words:	(
A. How is Kareem feel? B: He's	okay.	(
The shark is the more dangero	us sea animal.	()
Waleed doesn't like eating fish	. does Waleed?	()
Waleed doesn't like eating have	-h in the sun.	()
1 You shouldn't walking too muc		
E	Writing)	
6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (8	0) words on:	6
"A nat	ture reserve"	
••••		
4		***************************************
35		•••••
(a-		





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- What is the widest bridge in the world?
 - a) 6th of October bridge.

b) El-Waraq bridge.

c) The American bridge.

- d) the Tahya Masr bridge.
- - a) four hundred

b) four thousand

c) four million

- d) four men
- What is the floor made of?
 - a) Stone.

b) Ceramic.

c) Glass.

- d) Iron.
- What is the best time to cross the bridge?
 - a) At sunset.

b) At sunrise.

c) In the early morning.

d) At night.

B) language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



- Menna: I haven't seen our friend Amira for long.
- Sama: She is in (1).....
- Menna: Why is she there?
- Sama : (2) she had an accident.
- Menna: (3) have the accident?
- Sama : Last week.
- Menna: Are you going to visit her?
- Sama : | (4) her yesterday.
- Menna: Why (5) tell me?
- Sama : Because you were absent yesterday.



Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, a lion put his foot on a mouse who climbed on the body of the lion. "Oh, please, sir, don't eat me!" shouted the little animal. "If you let me go, I will help you some time." The lion smiled, and let him go. Not long after that, some men put a net in the forest and the lion ran into it and could not get out. He knew that if he stayed there until morning the men would find him and kill him. The mouse heard him shouting and ran to help him. Lion still a while and I will help you," he said. Then he began to cut the net with his small teeth and soon cut the net in pieces. "You laughed at me once," he said, "as if you thought I was too little to help you. But I helped as I said." The lion thanked the mouse and they became friends.

tha	anked the mouse a	nd they became fri	iends.	a as r sala. The lion
	Answer the follow			
	What is the mai	n idea of the passa	ige?	
	-			
	What does the	underlined pronou		
	Why do you thi	nk the lion smiled?	,	
В) Choose the corre	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
	Some	tried to	catch the lion.	
	a) animals	b) lions	c) mice	d) men
		the net with his		
	a) feet	b) teeth	c) head	d) legs
	The lion			at help.
	a) shouted at	b) laughed at	c) thanked	d) ate
	\bigcirc V	ocabulary an	d Structure	
4 Ch	oose the correct a	nswer from a, b,	or d:	10
0	I'm going to travel	nearly 500 kilome	tres	the mountains.
	a) through	b) thorough	c) throw	d) cross
0	I hope that I	my ex	ams so that I car	go to the university.
	a) succeed	b) pass	c) fail	d) get
4				



awind	use the win	d to per-	-
a) robots	b) turbines	d to produce electri	city.
a) lobots	nt to the	c) rockets	d) planes
a) exhibition	nt to theb) funfair	, we saw many	beautiful fish
a) exhibition	b) funfair	c) museum	d) aquarium
[]	my lunch with r	ny friend because h	e was hunger
a) Shared	b) agreed	c) took	d) filled
@ We can get en	ectricity from	······································	d) med
a) signs	b) rockets	c) solar panels	el) also
The Grand Eg	yptian Museumb) welcomed		u) arones
a) walked	b) welcomed	c) opened	
Next summer	, r tr	avel to England	d) made
a) going to	of am anna to		
You will	to the m	Oon one day	d) going
a) 90	(D) Went	-1	
0	year, I spent my	holiday in Davi	d) went
a) In	b) Ago	c) Last	
•	-		d) Yesterday
Read and corre	ect the underlined wor	de.	
O Planes are fas	st than trains	do.	4
2 You mustn't I	ook after your health.		()
O Ali, whose bo	ought a new car, is my n	A. 63	()
1 There will be	any accidents in the fur	eighbour.	()
	any accidents in the fur	ture.	()
	F 1177-978		
	(E) Writi	A STATE OF THE STA	
6 Write a			
e a paragra	aph of EIGHTY (80) wo	rds on:	
	"The job you wo		6
******	The Job you wo	ulu like to do	
	••••••		

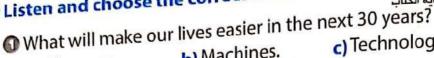
************	17.71		
	•••••		

25		·····	
33	and the second second		





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- c) Technology.
- d) Apps.

- a) Changes.
- b) Machines.
- What will phones have in the next 30 years? b) Images for everything.
 - a) Apps for everything. d) Cameras.
- - c) a lot of changes b) few changes a) no changes
- Will our lives be more interesting in 30 years' time?
 - a) Yes.
- **b)** No.
- c) Sorry.
- d) No way.

d) nothing

Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

:Hi, Hossam! How are you now? Ali

Hossam: Fine! (1)......go out last night?

:(2)....., I didn't. Ali

Hossam: (3).....?

:Because it rained hard last night.

Hossam: What did you do then?

: I (4)......TV. Ali

Hossam: What was there on TV?

:There (5)..... a nice film for Ahmed Helmy. Ali

Hossam: Oh! I saw that film, too.

Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Marwa,

I didn't hear from you for a long time. I hope you are well. I had a terrible day at school yesterday. My friends and I were playing volleyball in the playground when I suddenly fell. At first, I didn't feel much pain, but later on my leg started hurting badly. I couldn't walk, so my friends helped me



around. They took me to a hospital and stayed with me until my mum and

	We came home last ni know how valuable n them. So I want to say Yours	ght and I feel by friends are. I feel very hap	oken and I need better now. This I don't know w py to have such	ded to rest accident a hat I woul I good frie	ny mum and for a month. Ilso made me d do without nds like you.
	Answer the follow Why does Doaa	ing questions feel happy?	S :		
	When did that a	ccident happe			•••••
	® What do you thi	nk Doaa want	s us to know in	her e-mail	7
	She won't be ak a) week	ole to go to sch	n a, b, c or d: ool for a		
	a) her leg	pronoun "it" re	efers to	d) day	
	a) home b)	hospital	school	State of	friends
4	Choose the correct a	Ocabulan	and Go	d) stre	et
	THE CUITERT S	M. CHARMAN F.			
	a) environment	kking across S	inai. It's going to	o be a big	10
	c) development A/Ana) earthquake		w) daven	ture	
	a) earthqual	caused da	mage to many b	uildings.	
	My brother likes s	b) aquarium Wimming so l	c) reserve	ewimmina	d) alley
	twice a week.	ranning, so i	ie goes to the s	wimming .	
	a) ball We always put the	b) pool	c) gym		d) aquarium
	a) rubbish		III tile bill.	lino	d) shell

a) rubbish

PART (3)		W 1/2 550	
	- Iking	the bridge.	
Many people enjo	by walking	c) a cross	d) course
a) across	b) cross	the seeds to grow.	
a) across The	is where we pro-	c) soil	d) gym
a) nature reserve	b) stone	the exams	
I'm very worried a	bout the results	c) by	d) with
a) of	b) from	was the Karnak Temple	2.
① The	place we were to	was the Karnak Temple	d) biggest
			7 7
a) more bigWe're going to	alving i	c) gone	d) going
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	-13	_, _
a) go When did Dina's fa	mily	c) going	d) gone
a) go	b) went	c) going	u) gone
	I - din ad word	lc•	4
Read and correct the	underlined work	t place we visited was	
In my opinion, the	better and quietes	t place we visited was	()
the Habu Temple.			()
You don't like fish,			(
We mustn't arrive t	o work late.	· il · fishing?	()
Will there being room	ckets to travel into	space in the future?	()
	(F) Writin	70 5	
	E) bookin		
(i) Write a paragraph of	FIGHTY (80) word	ds on:	
Write a paragraph of			0
	"A great project	in Egypt"	

35			***************************************





1 Listen and choose the correct answer	r from - I
What is your uncle's job?	
a) A teacher.	نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
c) A doctor.	b) An engineer
What's your aunt's job?	d) A businesswoman.
a) A nurse.	The second second
c) A doctor.	b) An engineer.
A: What kind of engines does your ur a) ships b) buses	d) A businesswoman
a) ships	ncle design? B: Engines for
A: Where does your and	c) cars d) planes
A: Where does your aunt work? B: In a) office b) bank	n a/an
b) bank	c) school
Dangue	UTIOSDITAL
Lunguage	Functions)
Complete the following dialogue	
Where are you going Back a	The state of the s
· IIII going to huy a heal.	
Janura : (1)	11 -11 15 Miles 15
Samira: (1)	you going to buy a book?
Rasha: Because reading is my favou	rite (2)
Rasha: Yes, I think so. It's very useful	reading is useful?
Samira: What do you this I have	· Alate of white or 6
Samira: What do you think I should re	ead?
Rasha: In my opinion, you should re	ead adventure stories.
Samira: I think The Old Man and the S Rasha: 1(5)	sea is a good story. Do you?
Rasha: 1(5)	

(Reading Comprehension)



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hossam and Ali are brothers, but they are different in everything. Hossam always helps his mother with the housework. When Hossam gets up, he quickly makes his bed. Then, he goes to the kitchen to help his mother prepare

breakfast. Before they eat, Hossam sets the table. When they finish eating, he washes up and dries the dishes. Moreover, he sweeps the floor instead of his mother. On the other hand, Ali gets up and waits until they prepare breakfast. He never makes his bed. He never sets the table. He does nothing at home, so their parents like Hossam more than Ali.

their parents like Hos			
Answer the follo What does Hos	sam do after he		
② What does Hos	sam help his m	other with?	ry co knie c
🕲 Who do you th	ink is better; Ho	ossam or Ali? Why?	
B) Choose the corre			45000
		breakfast with his mot	her
a) Ali b) Hossam	c) Hala d)	Hoda
Parents like Ali	t	han Hossam.	20
) better		most
The underlined	d pronoun " <u>thei</u>	refers to	ii ii ii ii o
a) Ali		b) Hossam	
c) father and n	nother	d) Ali and Hossam	Pacin
	ocabulary'	and Structure	. cilmak
Choose the correct			
You should be		to your friends.	10
a) polite	b) impolite	c) bad	
② You should		other people's opinion	d) ugly
a) disagree	b) refuse	c) respect	
Car doors are mad	de of		d) dislike
a) plastic	b) wood	c) metal	d) nanor
I went to the		and saw an exhibition	a) paper
a) museum	b) funfair	c) stadium	d) aguarium
		ding where tools and m	achines are used
for making or rep	airing things.		iacilines are uses
a) school	b) workshop	c) theatre	d) cinema

Jupiter is the large	est	in the solar s	ystem.
a) environment		b) planet	
c) material		d) sports centre	
0 A	stung my	hand while swimmin	g in the sea.
a) shark	b) whale	c) turtle	d) jellyfish
What did you		for lunch today?	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
a) eat	b) ate	c) eating	d) eaten
What do you thir	nk is	dangerous anima	al in the world?
a) the most	b) the more	c) most	d) more
O Don't help us, Da	ad! Sama and I can	wash the car by	120 1
a) yourselves	b) ourselves	c) himself	d) herself
Read and correct t			4
1 It is raining outsi	de. We <u>shouldn't</u> u	ise an umbrella.	()
There were meat	t in the oven.	Andrew Control of the Andrew Control	()
lf we don't water	r plants, they <u>died</u> .		()
Mostafa will atte	end the party, will		()
	E Wri	iting)	
6 Write a paragrapl	n of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	6
	"Your favo	ourite sport"	

******	on orders or the con-		
Marin Control		- A TEL - TEL	
	(14) (1 T (40)		
35	•••••		





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- What is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean?
 - a) The octopus.
- b) The stingray.
- c) The shark.
- d) The sea turtle.

- How many teeth does a shark use?
 - a) 2 thousand.
- b) 2 hundred.
- c) 200 thousand. d) 20 thousand.
- What does a stingray do when it knows a shark is coming?
 - a) It goes underwater.
- b) It jumps in water.
- c) It jumps out of water.
- d) It swims fast.
- How many legs does the octopus have?
 - a) 2 legs.
- b) 4 legs.
- c) 8 legs.
- d) 12 legs.

Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Gamal: Which job would you like to do in the future?



Nora: I want to be an (1).....

Gamal: An architect! Why do you choose this job?

Nora: Because I like to design (2)...... like my father.

Gamal: Is your father an architect, too?

Nora : Yes, he is. And (3)......you?

Gamal: I'd like to be (4).....

Nora : (5).....?

Gamal: Because I like programming computers.

Nora: Wow! It's a fantastic job.



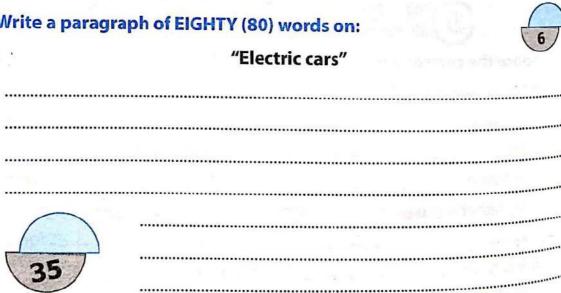
Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello, my name is Samy. I am thirteen years old. I want to tell you about the new Water Park in my town. We are going to go there on Saturday. There are many scary slides there. But I am brave enough to ride them. There is an interesting pool. It makes its own waves and everybody tries to jump over



them. The park has many snack bars. They sell everything from fast food to ice cream. There is just one problem. The Water Park is very busy at the weekends. You need to wait in very long lines for the slides. They even allow

A) Answer the follows: What is the pr	oblem with the W	· /ater Park?	
What can you	buy at the Water	Park?	······································
What is speci-	al about the pool?	?	
B) Choose the cor The underline	ed word "there" re	a, b, c or d:	Detroiten beart
Samy has a s	b) slides mall		d) town
Samy will visit the Water Park		-11	d) dog
a) Saturday	b) Sunday	c) Monday	d) Tuesday
Choose the correct	Vocabulary t answer from a,	b cord	
a) dairy We		- 1 101110111	ed to him on the island d) book
a) talked My father is the	b) did	c) had	d) went
a) at	b) toyo	c) in	d) for
a) stings	h) hides	c) covers	d) protects nd animals in the ocean
a) protect	b) prevent	c) kill	d) eat







Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- What didn't you practise when you were a child?
 - a) Drawing.
- b) Music.
- c) Reading.
- d) Sports.

- Are you good at sports?
 - a) No.
- b) Yes.
- c) Of course.
- d) Sure.

- What are you good at?
 - a) Running.

b) Swimming.

c) Walking.

d) Playing a sport.

- How often do you run?
 - a) Always.
- b) Never.
- c) Not often. d) Every day.

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Soha: Welcome to Egypt, your second country.

Tourist: Thanks a lot!

Soha : (1)......you from?

Tourist: I'm from Australia.

Soha : How long will you stay here?

Tourist: I'll stay for (2)

: What places will you visit?

Tourist: I'll visit (3).....

: What do (4) Egypt?

Tourist: I think it's a (5)......country.



Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Leaning Tower of Pisa is one of the most wonderful buildings in Europe. It is in the Italian town of Pisa. Pisa is one of the most visited European cities. It is close to other big cities of Italy, such as Florence and Lucca. Tower of Pisa is 60 metres high and it is an important tourist place.



Visitors can climb the tower and enjoy the wonderful view. They started to build the Tower of Pisa in 1173 and stopped in 1185 because Pisa had war with Florence. They finished building it in 1319. It opened to **the public** in 2001. In 2008, after engineers removed many hundred tons of earth below it the tower will remain for the next 200 years.

	ollowing questions the Tower of Pisa		
Tiow night.	stile lower of rise	a grantesa	
What do pe	ople enjoy when	they climb the T	ower of Pisa?
③ When did t	hey finish buildin	g the Tower of Pi	
	orrect answer fro		December 1
The underli	ned word "the pu	ıblic" refers to	
a) people	b) engineers n <u>"it</u> " refers to the	c) buildings	d) cities
a) Lucca			
	Tower of Pisa is i	c) bridge	d) tower
a) Africa		c) America	d) Asia
D	Vocabulary	and Structu	ire)
Choose the corre	ct answer from a	a, b, c or d:	10
1 A/An	is a person w	ho works with m	oney and numbers.
a) accountant	b) engineer		
		c) dentist	d) scientist
The party was .a) bad	yest	erday. We enjoye	d ourselves a lot.
u) bau	b) boring	c) terrible	d) amazing
We will all have	cars	in the future.	
a) space	b) electronic	c) driverless	d) rocket
The Tanta-Alexa	ndria road is 100	kilometres	u) locket
a) high	b) tall	c) long	d) strong





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- Who woke me up very early?
 - a) My baby brother.

b) My baby cousin.

c) My baby son.

- d) My baby girl.
- 2 What weren't there at breakfast?
 - a) Milk or water.

b) Milk or juice.

c) Milk or bread.

- d) Milk or cheese.
- When did I go to the shop?
 - a) At quarter past six.

b) At half past six.

c) At quarter to six.

- d) At six o'clock.
- What homework did I try to do?
 - a) Science.
- b) History.
- c) Arabic.
- d) Maths.



Complete the following dialogue:

Jake: What will you do if you have a holiday?

John: I will go to (1)..... with my family.

Jake: (2)......go to Canada?

John: Because I love the mountains there.

Jake: Where will you stay there?

John: I will stay in (3).....

Jake: When will (4).....?

John: I'll travel in the summer.

Jake: I hope you will have a nice holiday.

John: (5).....very much, my friend.





Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



Really, we have a lot of great projects and achievements in Egypt, so we should be proud of our great country. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. The Tahya Masr Bridge is

the greatest proje	ect in Egypt.	or the bridge. Th	e Tahya Masr Bridge is
A) Answer the fo	llowing question		
Why should	we be proud of I	Egypt?	
How wide is	s the Tahya Masr	Bridge?	
What is the	name of the islar	nd mentioned in th	ne passage?
a) 4 years. How many a) 4	b) 40 thousand	com a, b, c or d: ce to be built? c) 10 years. on building the brid d. c) 4 hundred. ade of	dge?
a) wood	b) stone	c) glass	d) fiber
		y and Structu	re)
1 Choose the corr	rect answer from	n a, b, c or d: n the floor to watch	the film.
a) teaspoon	b) curtain	c) cushion	d) statue
Kayaking is a	spo	ort. It is very interes c) cave	a) an

a) businessman b) pilot c) engineer d) accountant My mother always advises me to buy things from shops. a) nearing b) nearby c) near d) nearly A/An is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reef. a) turtle b) octopus c) stingray d) shell When I was in London, I bought a/an and sent it to my best friend. a) presentation b) rock c) postcard d) adventure Where your parents going to go tomorrow evening? a) is b) are c) do d) does A: When you play tennis? B: I play it on Fridays. a) are b) did c) do d) were We went early because that is	@ A/An	. is a person who de	esigns machines or	engines.
a) nearing b) nearby c) near d) nearly A/An	a) businessman	b) pilot	c) engineer	d) accountage
a) nearing b) nearby c) near d) nearly A/An	My mother always	advises me to buy	things from	shops
a) turtle b) octopus c) stingray d) shell When I was in London, I bought a/an	a) nearing	b) nearby	c) near	d) nearly
a) turtle b) octopus c) stingray d) shell When I was in London, I bought a/an	3 A/An	is a big, flat fish an	d it lives in the cora	al reef.
 When I was in London, I bought a/an	a) turtle	b) octopus	c) stingray	d) shell
Where	When I was in Londo	on, I bought a/an	and sent it	to my best friend
a) is b) are c) do d) does A: When your parents going to go tomorrow evening? a) are b) did c) do d) were	a) presentation	b) rock	c) postcard	d) adventure
(a) are (b) are (c) do (d) does (a) A: When	Where	your parents goi	ng to go tomorrow	evening?
a) are b) did c) do d) were	a) 13	b) are	c) do	d) does
b) did c) do d) were	② A: When	you play tennis	? B: I play it on Frid	lays.
We went early because that is	a) ale	b) did	c) do	The second secon
, and the same time.	We went early beca	use that is	time.	1 - 45
a) the quietest b) quietest	a) the quietest			
c) quieter (d) quieter than	c) quieter		d) quieter than	
a yareer cidii	6 Read and correct the	underlined words		
	A: Do you have any	sistors? P. Vos II	.	4
Read and correct the underlined words:	2 My friend going ph	one her mum hass	ve.	()
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because above to the second of the secon	Mona ismost careful	Il than her little sis	use sne's late.	
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friendgoing phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister.				()
 Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friendgoing phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. 	<u> </u>			()
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert.		(E) Writin	g	
 Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friendgoing phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. 	Write a paragraph of I	EIGHTY (80) word	s on•	
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert.				6
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:		can we save the	environment?"	
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert.	•••••		••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:	***************************************			
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:				·······
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:				
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:				
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:			••••	
Read and correct the underlined words: A: Do you have any sisters? B: Yes, I have. My friend going phone her mum because she's late. Mona is most careful than her little sister. You must to take water when you go to the desert. Writing Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:	35		••••	
c) quietes	c) quieter Read and correct the A: Do you have any My friend going ph	sisters? B: Yes, I ha one her mum beca	d) quieter than s: ve. use she's late.	
, and the individual time.	We went early beca		time.	u) were
we went early because that is	a) ale	b) did	c) do	The second secon
b) did C) d0 d) were	a) are	you play tennis		lays.
b) did c) do d) were	200 <u>000</u> 00	b) are	c) do	d) does
A: When you play tennis? B: I play it on Fridays. a) are b) did c) do d) does d) does d) does	a) is	your parents goi	ng to go tomorrow	evening?
(a) are (b) are (c) do (d) does (a) A: When	a) presentation	b) rock	c) postcard	d) adventure
Where	When I was in Londo	on, I bought a/an	and sent it	to my best friend
When I was in London, I bought a/an	a) turtle	b) octopus	c) stingray	d) shell
a) turtle b) octopus c) stingray d) shell When I was in London, I bought a/an	3 A/An	is a big, flat fish an	d it lives in the cora	al reef
 A/An	a) nearing			3
a) nearing b) nearby c) near d) nearly A/An		advises me to buy		d) accountant
My mother always advises me to buy things from	a) businessess			
My mother always advises me to buy things from	(A) A/An	is a marsan who di	origns machines or	

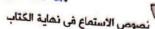






1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Where is the British Museum?



- a) Paris
 - b) London
- c) Mexico
- d) San Francisco

- When did the British Museum open?
 - a) 1759
- **b)** 2000
- c) 1795
- d) 1820
- The British Museum has more than objects.
 - a) 130,000
- **b)** 13,000,000 **c)** 13,000 **d)** 1,300
- @ When did the Rosetta Stone arrive at the museum?
 - a) 1759
- d) 1802
- c) 1795
- d) 1820

Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:



Teacher: Why are you too late, Tamer?

Tamer : Sorry, sir. There were too (1)......cars on the road.

Tamer : I came on foot.

Teacher: Is this the (3)......you come late?

Tamer : No, sir. It is my (4).....time.

Teacher: Second time! Then you can't go into the class.

Tamer : I'm so sorry sir, but we have a test today.

Teacher: OK. You (5).....leave home earlier next time.

Tamer : Sure, sir. Thank you.



Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Music is the thing that has the power to make everyone **pleased**. The poorest person can hear it played all around him on radios and loudspeakers. It fills you up with real happiness. All kinds of music are fantastic and it doesn't matter whether you listen to happy, sad, or joyful music because it helps to treat illnesses. No party is complete without it. Whether at a birthday party, or even a marriage. The first thing we hear is music, before our birth; when our mothers listen to music. Then, when we are born, we hear our mothers and fathers sing for us. Music becomes even more important when we become older.

more important	when we becom	e older.	is. Music becomes even
AND AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY OF	following question		
1 What power	er does music hav	re?	
How can a	poor person enjo	y music?	
Mention so	ome kinds of mus	ic.	
B) Choose the c	orrect answer fr	om a.b.cord:	
The word "	pleased " means	om a, b, c or a.	
a) sad	b) worried	c) happy	d) difficult
Music help	s us to be		an real
a) ill	b) worried	c) angry	d) healthy
6 The underli	ned word "It" refe	ers to	• •
a) music	b) a loudspeak	er c) a radio	d) a party
D	Vocabulary	and Structu	re)
Choose the corre	ct answer from	a, b, c or d:	10
Technology wil	I	our lives easie	er and more interesting.
	b) take	c) make	
Climbing mour	ntains is	for old	d people.
	b) flat		d) crowded
		to catch fish	
a) food	b) line	c) leg	d) tooth



Λ A IS an	area of land in whi	ich animals and	plant
a) nature reserve	b) rubbish bin	c) ground	plants are protected.
O Doctors use	to keep 1	their hands clar	d) soil
a) gloves	19	b) rubbish ba	an during surgeries.
c) posters		d) headphon	igs
a cmall flying object	cts that you can	Control from	es
@ Silian 117. 3		control from th	ne ground are called
a) drones		C) manuals	.1
		c) parcels	d) rackets
My mum has a pla	h) to	the next w	eekend.
a) at	b) to	c) in	d) for
People	speak I	oudly in public	libraries.
a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	will will
Oid you take the	photo by	, M	arwa?
a) itself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
1 A: When	you	play football? B	: I play it every Friday.
a) are	b) did	c) do	d) were
Read and correct the The children can' When I'm hungry I'm not good at E	t look after <u>himsel</u> at work, I <u>eats</u> my inglish, <u>are</u> I? ooys at school yest	<u>f.</u> sandwiches. erday.	
6 Write a paragraph		ting)	
o mite a paragraph			6
	"Your last	weekend"	
······			
	ર મરુ,અલ્ફાર્ભી જાણ		
***************************************	e-27		
15.			
35			
			(103)

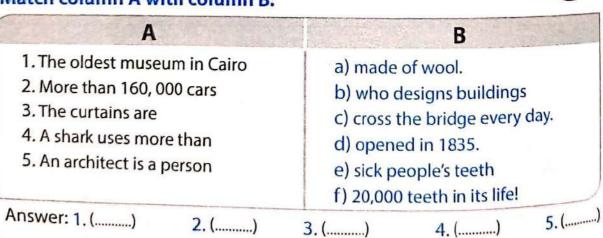
Al-Azhar Test (1)





Finish the following dialogue with these words:					
	shouldn't - some - hole - First				
Lama	: I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?				
Mariam	: (1), find a sunny place in the garden.				
Lama	: Like this?				
Mariam	: Yes, that's right. Second, the ground (2)				
	have many stones in it.				
Lama	:OK. What should I do after that?				
Mariam	: Then, make a small (3) in the ground.				
Lama	: How deep must it be?				
Mariam	: About 2 cm. Next, put (4) water in the				
	hole so it is not too dry.				
Lama	: Should I water it now?				
Mariam	: Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.				
Finish the	following two mini-dialogues:				
1. Menna	:What does an accountant do?				
Maya	*				
2. Khaled	?				
Sayed	: No, I visited the Egyptian Museum.				

Match column A with column B:





B Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its biggest objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first time.

In my opinion, the most important part of the museum is the Great Court. Its big glass room makes it the most beautiful covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000, so it is also the most modern part of the museum.

t opened in 2000, s	out is also the me	ost modern part o	of the museum.
What is the			every year?
B) Choose the co	errect answer fro Stone arrived at	m a, b, c or d:	
a) 1759	b) 2000	c) 1802	d) 1820
The British N	Auseum has more	e than	objects.
a) 130, 000	b) 13, 000,000	c) 13, 000	d) 1, 300
@ "Hieroglypl	ics" is a	0 18 (0)	
a) sport	b) subject	c) language	d) colour
	Vocabulary	and Structu	re)
Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	5
1 How	is the Cairo-Ale	exandria desert ro	ad?
a) high	b) long	c) tall	d) many

c) more

c) aquarium

This is the popular book in the library.

b) less

We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the

b) planetarium

a) least

a) valley



d) little

d) museum

	Basmala	lunch in the care	last Sunday.	
	a) had	b) has	c) is having	d) have
	His ship sank	k there was a		323
	a) because	b) but	c) so	d) although
	3 A/An	has eight legs.		
	a) snake	b) octopus	c) coral reef	d) turtle
	When you cr	ross a road, you	look left and	right.
	a) must	b) are	c) aren't	d) mustn't
	A scientist is	a personstu	dies science.	
	a) where	b) which	c) who	d) what
	Your grandn	nother doesn't like fish,	she?	
	a) does	[변경 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1 :	c) don't	d) do
	@ A	is something you sleep	in when you g	camping.
	a) camel	b) guide	c) tent	d) journey
6	Read and cor	rect the underlined wor	ds:	2.5
	1 You must w	alk on the grass.		()
	@ When did D	ina's birthday?		()
	They're reall	ly enjoying <u>yourselves</u> .		spec (1.15)
	We will live	on the moon?		()
	That mount	ain was <u>more high</u> than w	e thought.	()
		D Writin	9	on per es Stewarts
7	Write a parag	graph of about (7) sente "A famous		2
			•••••	
			•••••	
	***			85-4
		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1	
			•••••	
	20			

Al-Azhar Test (2)





sure - did - Have - do

1	Finish	the following	dialogue	with	these w	ords:
The state of			the state of the s			



: Do you like classical music, Dina? Mona

Dina

: Yes, I (1)...... It's my favourite. : When (2)..... you last go to a concert? Mona

: I last went to a concert last year. It was fantastic. Dina

: (3).....you got a ticket for the concert on Saturday? Mona

: Yes, I have! Dina

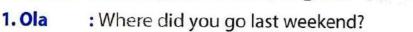
Mona : Can I come with you?

: Yes, you can. Are you happy about that? Dina

Mona

Dina : Ok. That's great!

Finish the following two mini-dialogues:



Heba

2. Mona

Sally : My shoes are made of leather.



Match column A with column B:

1. Mohamed Salah is a footballer

- 2. Did you go
- 3. The Tahya Masr Bridge
- 4. Why don't we
- 5. "Alone" means

- a) not with other people.
- b) go kayaking?
- c) I don't know. I'm not very tall.
- d) goes over the Nile in Cairo.
- e) shopping at the weekend?
- f) who scores a lot of goals.

Answer: 1. (.........) 2. (........)

3. (.....)

4. (.....)

5. (.....)



B Reading Comprehension)

(1)	Read	the	following	thon	answer	the	questions:
	nead	tne	tollowing,	then	answer	the	questions

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday and her family took us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I did not go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

came home very late!	20 2004				
A) Answer the following questions: What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?					
Why do you th	ink the writer didn'	t go on the big	wheel?	0-149-44	
B) Choose the corre					
She remember	ed all the things tha	t her teacher ta	ught in .		
a) maths b) science c)	history	d) art		
The writer did	n't come home	•			
a) early b) late c)	slow	d) hap	ру	
They saw old	at the n	nuseum.			
a) wheels b) trees c)	statues	d) peo	ple	
	locabulary an	d Structure	2		
Choose the correct			Antolo	5	
① You	olay games in the ro	oad.			
a) must	b) have	c) mustn't		d) should	
My grandmother	is 65. We all	what she	says.		
a) respect	b) weak	c) worried		d) read	
It was great at the My team won 2-0!					
a) valley	b) planetarium	c) aquarium		d) stadium	
When you put a stone in water, it					
a) reads	b) sinks	c) floats		d) cleans	

O The teacher was a	ngry because all the	e students were ver	У
a) quite	b) noisy	c) interesting	d) quiet
O We all looked at			
a) yourselves	b) themselves		d) himself
O There weren't mar		etch, th	ere?
a) weren't	b) were	c) wasn't	d) was
O There	trains in 1900, but	there weren't any T	V ₅ ,
a) was	b) were	c) wasn't	d) are
O The balls are very			
a) bowling alley	b) planetarium	c) aquarium	d) stadium
When I	tired, I usually go	to bed.	
a) felt	b) feels	c) feel	d) feeling
Read and correct t	he underlined wo	rds:	25/
O Sara wants to be a	marine biologist,	isn't she?	(
O What's your coat i	naking of?		()
O If water is 100 °C.	it boiling.		()
O I like this book alt	hough it is funny.		()
O The whale is the b	oig sea animal.		()
•	(D) Writi	ing)	
Write an email of a	about (7) sentence	es about:	
	"A fantastic da	y you had"	2
Your name is	Amir(a) and your	friend's name is Ka	areem(a).
237777777777777777777777777777777777777		***************************************	**************************
*************************		**********************************	*****************************
מיינייניינייניינייניינייניינייניי			**********************

		Manufallation from the second section of	
20		**************************************	
ADMINISTRAÇÃO DE CONTRACTOR DE		construction of the contract o	Million Million Control of the Contr

Part 4



) Listening Texts

- نصوص استماع الاختبارات التراكمية. . . Cumulative Exams Listening Texts
- 2) General Exams Listening Texts. نصوص استماع الاختبارات العامة على العنمج.



Listening Texts



Cumulative Tests

Cumulative Test 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest

The Tanya Mass bridge is the World's Widest suspension bridge. They started building it in 2014. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They finished it in 32 months. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

Cumulative Test 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

It is important to negotiate with other people when you decide something important.
Remember, negotiation is not about winning an argument. Listen carefully to what other people say. You should try to get the best ideas from and for each other.

Cumulative Test 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ali goes to school on foot because it is very near. His favouritve subject is English. During the break, he talks to his friends in the playground. After doing his homework, he watches TV.

Final Tests

(Test)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II.

Test 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

At the weekend, I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football but all his brothers wanted to play. On Sunday, mum helped me with my homework. Then dad and I went to the sports centre. There is a really big swimming pool.

Test 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Egypt, some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. It is traditional to make jewellery in Kenya. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over the country. Some local businesses also use social media and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries.

Test 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday. You will go to the moon! There will be rockets that leave Earth every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!

Test 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast. The octopus has got eight legs to help it! Some sea life, like the stingray, is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. There were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors.

Test 7

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Everyone should help save our planet. The air around us is full of pollution. You can plant a tree. Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

Test 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In ancient Egypt, the people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors

were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

These are three of the most interesting places in Luxor. The Valley of the Kings is the most popular place for tourists to visit. The biggest place is the Karnak Temple which is more crowded than the Valley of the Kings. The quietest place is Habu Temple because it is less crowded.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They finished it in 32 months. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps for everything.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle is an engineer. He designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman. She works in an office and goes to meetings.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The shark is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish and it lives in the ocean. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water! A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast – the octopus has got eight legs to help it!



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A sport is something that I never really practised when I was a child, so I'm not really good at sports. But when people look at me, they always say, that I can run very well, but I don't do it often or played so many sports.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

Today was a terrible day! My baby brother woke me up at 5 am! I am so tired now. I went downstairs for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. The shop was closed because it was only 6.30. I tried to do my maths homework but my laptop stopped working and I lost all my work.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. One of the biggest objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802.

رقم الإيداع: ١٥٢٩٢ / ٢٠٢٠ ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٩

